Contents
A-Z

Owner's Handbook for Vehicle

The Ultimate Driving Machine

THE BMW 4 SERIES GRAN COUPÉ.

OWNER'S HANDBOOK.

BMW EfficientDynamics
Less emissions. More driving pleasure.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

4 Series Gran Coupé

Owner's Handbook for the vehicle

Congratulations on your choice of a BMW.

The better you are acquainted with your vehicle, the easier you will find it is to handle. We would therefore like to offer you the following advice:

Please read the Owner's Handbook before setting out in your new BMW. Also use the integrated Owner's Handbook in your vehicle. It contains important notes on how to operate the vehicle, enabling you to derive maximum benefit from the technical advantages of your BMW. It also contains useful information which will help you to uphold both your BMW's operating safety, road safety, and its full resale value.

If applicable, you will find updates after the editorial deadline in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Supplementary information is provided in the other documents of on-board literature.

We wish you a safe and pleasant journey.

The Owner's Handbook is available as an app in many countries. You will find further information on the Internet at:

www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

English ID5 VI/16, 07 16 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Contents

For quick access to a particular topic or item, please consult the detailed alphabetical index, see page 282.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Notes

About this Owner's Handbook

Orientation

The quickest way to find information on a particular topic or feature is to consult the alphabetical index.

The first chapter is recommended for an initial overview of the vehicle.

Updates after going to press

Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the following Owner's Handbooks:

- Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.
- Online Owner's Handbook.
- BMW Driver's Guide App.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Handbook for navigation, entertainment and communication is available as a printed book from Service.

The topics of navigation, entertainment and communication can be called up using the following Owner's Handbooks:

- Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle on the Control Display.
- Online Owner's Handbook.
- BMW Driver's Guide App.

Additional sources of information

Service partner

A Service Partner of the manufacturer will be happy to answer any further questions.

Internet

Owner's Handbook and general information about BMW, for example on technology, on the Internet: www.bmw.com.

BMW Driver's Guide App

The Owner's Handbook is available as an app in many countries. You will find further information on the Internet at:

www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Handbook

⚠ Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◄ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

♲ Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

"..." identifies texts on a display in the vehicle for selecting functions.

›...‹ Identifies commands for the voice control system.

»...« Identifies replies by the voice control system.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Handling steps

The handling steps to be carried out are shown as a numbered list. The sequence of steps must be followed.

1. First handling step.
2. Second handling step.

Lists

Lists without a mandatory sequence or alternative possibilities are shown as a list with bullet points.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Symbol for components and assemblies

Recommends that you study the relevant section of this Owner's Handbook in connection with a particular part or assembly.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Handbook describes all models and all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. As a result, this Owner's Handbook may also contain descriptions and illustrations of equipment and functions not featured in your vehicle, for example due to selected special equipment or country variant.

This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems.

Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

If certain equipment and models are not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks provided.

In right-hand drive vehicles, some control functions are arranged differently from those shown in the illustrations.

Built-date

The 'built-date' of your vehicle is indicated underneath the door post on the driver's door.

The 'built-date' is defined as 'the calendar month and the calendar year in which the body shell and the powertrain subassemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line'.

Status of the Owner's Handbook

General

The high level of safety and quality of vehicles is ensured by continuous enhancement. In rare instances, your car may therefore differ from the information supplied here.

For Australia/New Zealand: general

When reading this Owner's Handbook, please bear the following in mind: to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards, we pursue a policy of continuous, ongoing development. Because modifications in the design of both vehicles and accessories may be introduced at any time, your own vehicle's equipment may vary from that described in this handbook. For the same reason, it is also impossible to guarantee that all descriptions will be completely accurate in all respects.

We must therefore request your understanding of the fact that the manufacturer of your vehicle is unable to recognise legal claims based on discrepancies between the data, illustrations and descriptions in this Owner's Handbook and your own vehicle's equipment. Please note, too, that some of the optional equipment described in this handbook is not available on Australian models due to restrictions imposed by Australian Design Rules and other requirements.

Should you require any further information, please contact your Service Partner or a qualified specialist workshop, who will be pleased to advise you.

Updates after going to press

Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the following Owner's Handbooks:

- Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.
- Online Owner's Handbook.
- BMW Driver's Guide App.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Your own safety

Intended use

Comply with the following when using the vehicle:

- OWNER'S HANDBOOK.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical data of the vehicle.
- The applicable laws and safety standards of the country in which the vehicle is used.
- Vehicle papers and legal documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically designed for the operating conditions and permit requirements prevalent in the country to which it was first delivered - approval. If your vehicle is to be operated in another country, it may have to be adapted to any prevailing different operating conditions and permit requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you cannot lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. A Service Partner is able to provide further information.

Maintenance and repair

Advanced technology behind this vehicle, for example the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, necessitates adapted methods of maintenance and repair.

Consequently, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having corresponding work carried out by a BMW Service Partner. If you select a different specialist workshop, BMW recommends that you select a workshop that can carry out the corresponding work such as maintenance and repair according to BMW specifications and works with appropriately trained personnel, referred to in this Owner's Handbook as another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If such work, e.g maintenance and repair, is performed inexpertly, it could result in consequential damage and thus constitute a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends using parts and accessory products that are specifically approved for this purpose by BMW.

You are recommended to consult a BMW Service partner for advice on genuine BMW parts and accessories, other BMW approved products and expert advice on all related matters.

The safety and compatibility of these products in conjunction with BMW vehicles have been checked by BMW.

BMW accepts product responsibility for genuine BMW parts and accessories BMW cannot accept liability for parts or accessory products of any kind which it has not approved.

BMW is unable to assess each individual product of outside origin as to its suitability for use on BMW vehicles without safety risk. Nor can suitability be assured if an official permit has

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

been issued for it in a specific country. Tests performed for such permits cannot always cover all operating conditions for BMW vehicles, and some of them therefore are insufficient.

Data memory

Many of the electronic components of your vehicle contain data memories, which save technical information on vehicle condition, events and errors temporarily or permanently. This technical information documents the condition of a component, a module, a system or its environment:

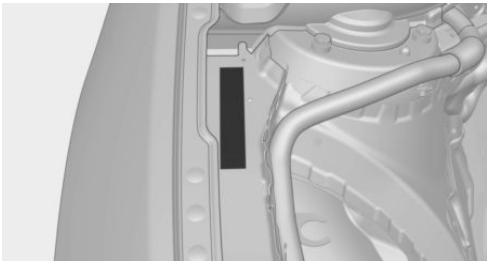
- Operating states of system components, for example, fill levels.
- Status messages of the vehicle and individual components, for example, wheel rotation speed, wheel speed, movement delay, transverse acceleration.
- Malfunctions and faults of important system components, for example, lights and brakes.
- Responses of the vehicle to special driving situations, for example, triggering of an airbag, using the stability control systems.
- Ambient conditions, for example, temperature.

This data is only of a technical nature and is for detecting and rectifying faults and optimisation of vehicle functions. Movement profiles over driven routes cannot be created from this data. When servicing, for example, during repairs, service processes, warranty cases or quality assurance, this technical information can be read by employees of a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop, including the manufacturer, from the event and fault data memories with special diagnostic tools. There, you will receive further information as needed. After rectifying the fault, the information in the fault memory is deleted or continuously overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations are conceivable in which this technical data can be personal in connection with other information, for example, accident report, damage to the vehicle, witness statements, etc. – possibly by enlisting the help of an expert.

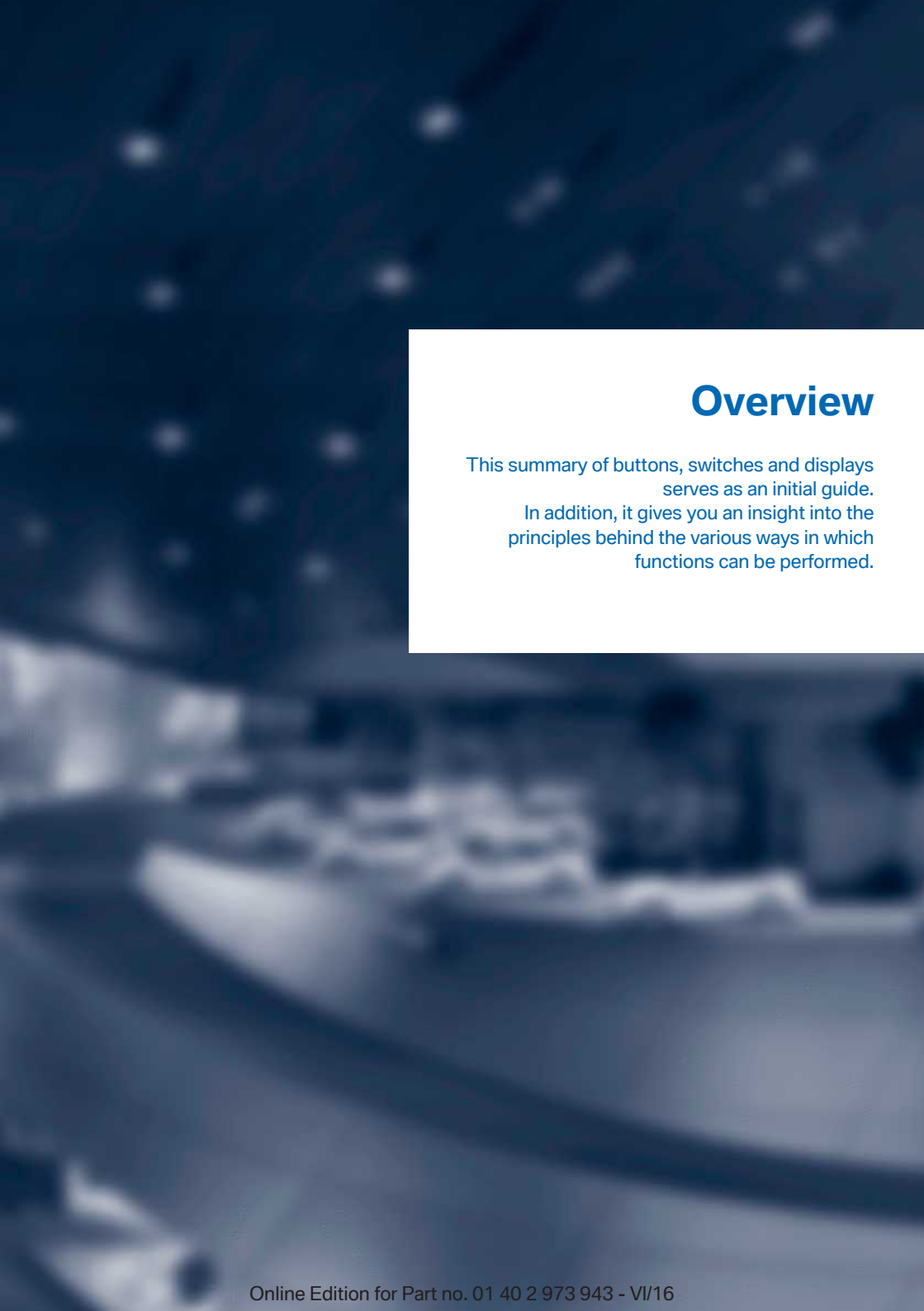
Additional functions, contractually agreed with the customer, for example vehicle location in an emergency, allow certain pieces of vehicle data to be transferred from the vehicle.

Vehicle identification number



The vehicle identification number is in the engine compartment.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16



Overview

This summary of buttons, switches and displays serves as an initial guide.
In addition, it gives you an insight into the principles behind the various ways in which functions can be performed.

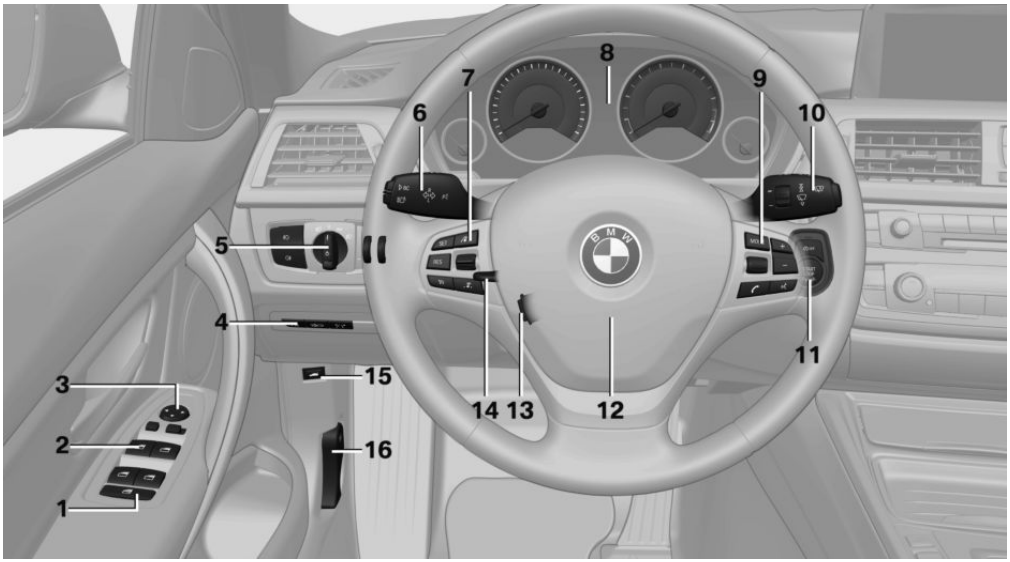
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Cockpit

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Around the steering wheel



1 Safety switch for window in rear passenger compartment 56

2 Power windows 56

3 Exterior mirror operation 69

4 Glove box on the driver's side 186

Driver Assistance Systems

Lane change warning 137

Intelligent Safety 126

Lane departure warning 135

5 Lights

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16


Front fog lights 115


Rear fog lights 115


Light switch 111


Lights off

Daytime driving lights 113


Side lights 111


Low-beam headlights 111


Automatic driving lights control 112

Adaptive Headlights 113

High-beam assistance 114


Instrument lighting 116

6 Steering-column lever, left


Turn indicator 85


High-beam headlights headlight flasher 85


High-beam assistance 114


Parking lights 112


On-board computer 106

7 Buttons on steering wheel, left


Speed limiter 138


Cruise Control on/off, interrupt 155


Active Cruise Control on/off, interrupt 149

Cruise Control: resume speed


Active Cruise Control: reduce distance


Active Cruise Control: increase distance

Rocker switch for Cruise Control

8 Instrument cluster 95

9 Buttons on steering wheel, right

Entertainment source, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6


Volume, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6


Voice control 23


Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Knurled wheel for selection lists 105

10 Steering-column lever, right


Wiper 86


Rain sensor 87


Cleaning the windows and headlights 87

11 

Start/stop engine and switch ignition on/off 81

Auto Start Stop function 82

12 Horn, total area

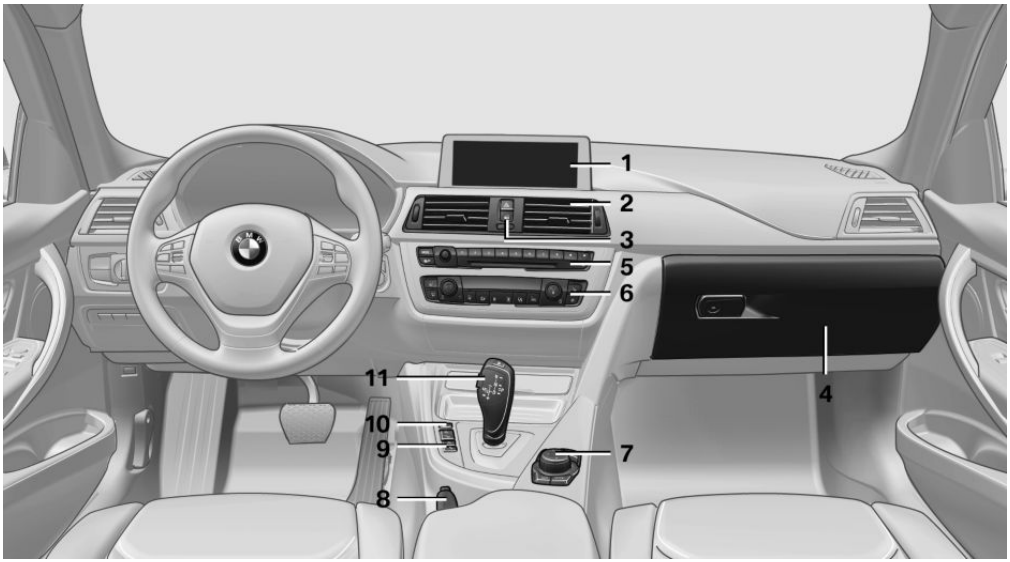
13 Steering wheel heating 71

14 Steering wheel adjustment 71

15 Opening the tailgate 49

16 Unlock bonnet 234

Around the centre console



1 Control Display 16

2 Ventilation 178

3 Hazard warning lights 252

Central locking system 46

4 Glove box 185

5 Radio/CD/Multimedia, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

6 Climate 173

7 Controller with buttons 16

8 Parking brake 84

9 Park Distance Control, PDC 158

Rear-view camera 162

Park assistant 168

Surround view 161

Side View 165

10 Drive experience switch 145

Dynamic Stability Control, DSC 143

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

11 Steptronic transmission selector lever 90

Manual gearbox selector lever 89

Around the roof lining

1 Intelligent emergency call 252

2 Glass Roof, electric 58

3 Front passenger airbag indicator lamp 120

4 Reading lights 116

5 Interior light 116

iDrive

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Principle

iDrive integrates the functions of a large number of switches. These functions can be operated using the Controller.

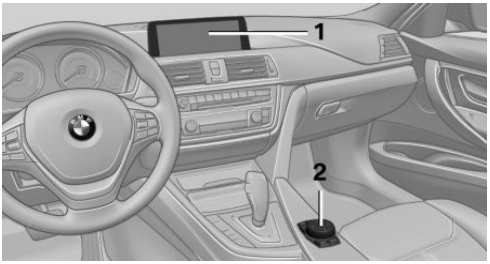
Safety note

WARNING

Operating integrated informations systems and communication devices during the journey can distract from traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Only operate the systems or devices if permissible in the traffic situation. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.◄

Control functions

Overview



1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

General

To clean the Control Display, comply with the information regarding care, see page 262.

To avoid risk of damage to the Control Display, do not place objects in front of the Control Display.

If the Control Display is exposed to very high temperatures, for example because of intensive sunshine, there may be a reduction in brightness and the Control Display may even switch itself off. Normal functions will be resaved when the temperature is reduced, for example by shading or using the air conditioning system.

Switching on

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press the Controller.

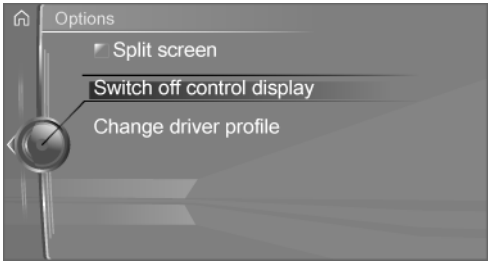
Switching off

1. 

Press the button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

2. "Switch off control display"



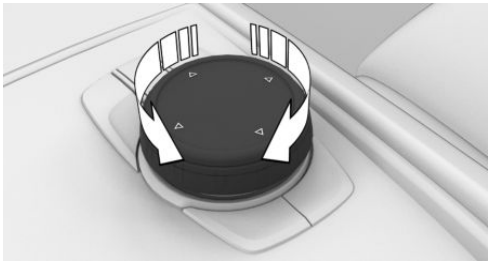
Controller

General

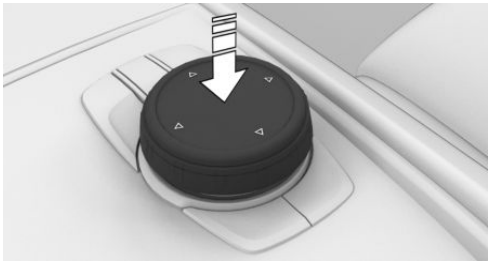
The buttons can be used to call up menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and alter settings.

Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller, see page 19.

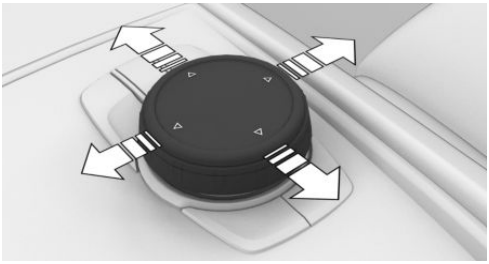
▷ Turning.



▷ Pressing.



▷ Tilting in four directions.



Buttons on the Controller

Press the button	Function
MENU	Press once: call up main menu.
MENU	Press twice: call up last used menus.
COM	Call up Communication menu.
MEDIA	Call up Media/Radio menu.
NAV	Call up Destination input menu of the navigation.
MAP	Call up navigation map.
BACK	Call up previous table.
OPTION	Calls up the Options menu.

Operation via Controller

Calling up the main menu

MENU Press the button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting a menu item

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.

2. Press the Controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Handbook

In this Owner's Handbook, the menu items that can be selected are shown in quotation marks, for example "iDrive settings".

Switching between screens

After a menu item has been selected, for example "iDrive settings", a new screen is displayed.

▷ Tilt the Controller to the left.

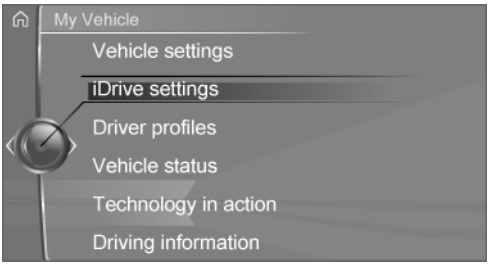
The current screen is closed and the previous screen is displayed.

▷ BACK Press the button.

The previous screen is opened again.

▷ Tilt the Controller to the right.

New screen is opened.



White arrows to the left or right indicate that other screens can be called up.

Calling up recently used menus

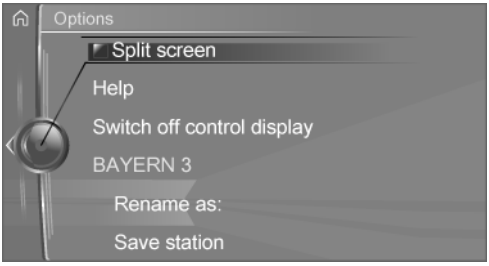
The recently used menus can be displayed.

MENU Press the button twice.

Calling up the Options menu

OPTION Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



The Options menu consists of various areas:

▷ Screen settings, for example "Split screen".

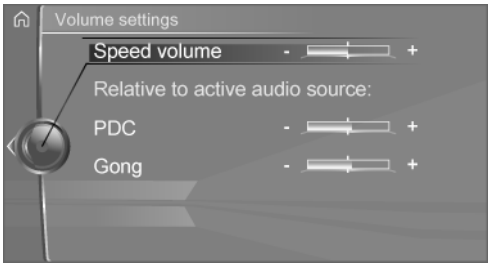
▷ Operating options for the selected main menu, for example for "Media/Radio".

▷ If applicable, other operating options for the selected menu, for example "Save station".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Adjusting the settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the Controller.

Enabling/disabling functions

Some menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The box indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

☑ Function is enabled.

☐ Function is disabled.

Entering letters and numbers

General

Letters and numbers can be entered via the Controller.

The keyboard display changes automatically.

Entry

1. Turn Controller: select letters or digits.
2. OK : confirm input.

Symbol	Function
⌫	Press Controller: delete letters or digits.
⌫	Press and hold the Controller: deletes all letters or numbers.

Change between upper/lower case, numbers and symbols

Depending on the menu, the input of lower case or upper case letters, numbers and symbols is possible.

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter letters.
1@+	Enter numbers.
abc or ABC	Switch between upper and lower case.

Entry comparison

When inputting names and addresses, the selection is gradually narrowed down and possibly supplemented with every subsequent letter that you enter.

Inputs are continuously compared with the data saved in the vehicle.

- Letters available for entry are restricted to those present in the vehicle data.
- Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages available in iDrive.

Operating alphabetical lists

For alphabetic lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which entries are available, can be shown on the left side.

1. Turn Controller quickly to the left or right.

   On the left, all letters are displayed for which an entry is available.
2. Select the initial letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed.

Touchpad

General

Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller.

Selecting functions

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Touchpad"
4. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Write": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": operating map.
   - ▷ "Browser": enter Internet addresses.
   - ▷ "Search fields": write letter without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio feedback": the letters and numbers entered are read out.

Entering letters and numbers

Entering letters requires a bit of practice to begin with. Pay attention to the following when entering:

- ▷ The system recognises upper and lower case and digits. It may be necessary to switch between upper and lower case, digits and characters, see page 19, for entering.
- ▷ Enter symbols as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter corresponding characters, such as accents or dots, so that the letter will be correctly detected. The input option depends on the language that has been set. You may need to enter special characters using the Controller.
- ▷ To delete a character, swipe on the touchpad towards the left.
- ▷ To enter a space, swipe towards the right in the middle of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter a hyphen, swipe towards the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter an underscore, swipe towards the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Operating map and Internet

The map of the navigation system and websites can be moved using the touchpad.

Function	Controls
Move map or websites.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/reduce map or websites.	Pinch or open up your fingers on the touchpad.
Show menu or open a link on the Internet.	Tap once.

Split screen

General

In the split screen view, additional information can be displayed on the right-hand side of the screen in some menus, for example information from the on-board computer.

This information remains visible in the split screen view even if a switch is made to another menu.

Switching the split screen view on/off

1. 

Press the button.
2. "Split screen"

Selecting display

The display can be selected in the menus in which the split screen view is possible.

1. Tilt the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

2. Press the Controller.

3. Select the desired setting.

Defining the display selection

The display selection can be defined.

1. Tilt the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the Controller.
3. "Personalise menu"
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Tilt the Controller to the left.

Status information

Status field

The following information is displayed in the status field:

- Messages.
- Reception level of mobile telephone network.
- Current entertainment source.
- Time.

Symbols in the status field

The symbols are combined in the following groups:

Symbols for telephone

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Reception level of mobile telephone network. Symbol flashes: network search.
	No mobile telephone network available.
	Data transfer not possible.
	Roaming active.
	Text message received.
	Receive message.
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.
	Contacts are loaded.

Symbols for entertainment

Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player.
	Music hard disc.
	AUX-IN port.
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB audio interface.
	Audio interface mobile telephone.
	Online Entertainment
	WLAN.
	iPod.

Other functions

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Spoken instructions switched off.
	Encrypted connection not active.
	Determining the current vehicle position.
	Traffic information.

Favourites buttons

General

iDrive functions can be saved on the favourites buttons and called up directly, for example radio stations, navigation destinations, telephone numbers and shortcuts into the menu.

The settings are saved for the currently used driver profile.

Saving a function

1. Select function via iDrive.
2. 1...8 Press and hold the desired button until a signal sounds.

Performing a function

1...8 Press the button.

The function is carried out immediately. If you have selected a telephone number, for example, the connection will also be established.

Displaying assignment of buttons

Touch the buttons with your finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed at the top edge of the screen.

Clearing assignment of buttons

1. Press and hold buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously for approximately 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Voice control system

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Principle

- Through the voice control system most functions shown in the Control Display can be operated by spoken commands. The system supports spoken input.
- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be operated via the voice control system.
- The system has a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ›...‹ Indicates commands for the voice control system in the Owner's Handbook.

Requirements

On the Control Display set a language that is also supported by the voice control system, so that the vehicle can identify spoken commands.

Setting the language, see page 26.

Issuing voice commands

Activating the voice control system

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for acoustic signal.
3. Issue the command.

   Command detected by voice control system is announced and displayed in instrument cluster.

Symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice control system is active.

If no further spoken commands are possible, switch to iDrive to operate the function in this case.

Switching off the voice control system

 Press the button on the steering wheel or say ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Most of the menu items on the Control Display can be called up using spoken commands.

Commands from other menus can be spoken as well.

Several list entries, for example telephone book entries, can also be selected using the voice control system. When doing this, list entries are to be spoken exactly as they are shown in the relevant list.

Displaying possible commands

The following is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display:

- Possible commands of the current menu.
- Possible commands from other menus.

- Voice recognition status.
- Encrypted connection status.

Help with the voice control system

- Have information about the functional principle of the voice control system announced: ›General information on voice control‹.
- Have help for the current menu announced: ›Help‹.

An example: calling up sound settings

Commands on the menu items are read out so they can also be selected using the Controller.

1. If necessary, switch on entertainment audio output.
2.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Media and radio‹
4. ›Sound‹

Settings

Setting the speech dialogue

You can set whether the system uses the standard dialogue or the short variant.

With the short variants of the speech dialogue, the system announcements are played in shortened form.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Voice control:"
5. Select the desired setting.

Selecting the entry language

The entry language can be selected for some languages.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Voice input:"
5. Select the desired setting.

Activating encrypted connection

Voice recognition can be improved by activating an encrypted connection.

Offboard voice processing makes it possible to use the dictation function and a natural destination input. For using it, data is sent to the service provider, Nuance, and stored locally there.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Offboard voice processing"

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during the confirmation by the voice control system. The function can be deactivated if the confirmations are frequently cancelled inadvertently, for example due to background noise or speaking.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Speaking during voice output"

Adjusting volume

Turn the volume knob during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is obtained.

- The volume is retained even if you change the volume of other audio sources.
- The volume is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Note regarding emergency calls

The voice control system should not be used for emergency calls. Under stress, the spoken language and voice pitch can change, which could unnecessarily delay the connection of your call.

Instead, use the SOS button, see page 252, in the area of the rear-view mirror.

Operating conditions

- Commands, numbers and letters should be pronounced fluently, with the usual emphasis and at a normal volume and speed.
- Always speak the commands in the language of the voice control system.
- When selecting the radio station, use the customary pronunciation of the station name as it is displayed on the Control Display.

  ›[...] Station ...‹, for example, Classic Radio station.
- Doors, windows and the Glass Roof should be kept closed to avoid noise interference.
- Avoid background noises in the vehicle while you are speaking.

General settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Language

Setting the language

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Language:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Setting the speech dialogue

Voice dialogue for the voice control system, see page 24.

Time

Setting the time zone

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time zone:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Setting the time

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Setting the time format

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time format:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Automatic time setting

Depending on equipment, the time, date and, if necessary, time zone are updated automatically.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

3. "Date and time"
4. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Date

Setting the date

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Date:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
6. Press the Controller.
7. Alter the setting for month and year accordingly.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Setting the date format

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Date format:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Setting the units of measure

The units of dimension for various values can be set, for example consumption, distances and temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Units"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Activating/deactivating display of current vehicle position

If GPS location finding is activated, the current vehicle position can be displayed in the corresponding ConnectedDrive App or in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "GPS tracking"
4. "GPS tracking"

Activating/deactivating information window

Information windows are automatically shown on the Control Display for many functions. Some of these information windows can be activated or deactivated.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Pop-ups"
4. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Control Display

Brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Depending on the lighting conditions, brightness control might not be immediately recognisable.

Screen saver

If no entries were made via iDrive, the screen saver can be displayed after a set time.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Screensaver"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Messages

Principle

The menu shows all messages that arrive in the vehicle, centrally in the form of a list.

General

The following messages can be displayed:

- Traffic messages.
- Check Control messages.
- Communication messages, for example e-mail, SMS or reminders.
- Service requirement messages.

Messages are additionally displayed in the status field.

Calling up messages

Via iDrive:

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the required message.

The corresponding menu is opened, in which the message is displayed.

Deleting messages

All messages from the list can be deleted which are not Check Control messages. Check Control messages remain for as long as they are relevant.

Via iDrive:

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the required message if necessary.
3. 

Press the button.
4. "Delete this notification" or "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be made

- Select the applications from which messages are permitted.
- Sort the sequence of messages by date or priority.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Notifications"
4. Select the desired setting.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Deleting personal data in vehicle

Principle

The vehicle saves personal data, depending on how it is used, such as saved radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General

The following data can be deleted, depending on equipment:

- Driver profile settings.
- Saved radio stations.
- Saved favourites buttons.
- Trip and on-board computer values.
- Music hard disc.
- Navigation, for example saved destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, for example favourites, cookies.
- Office data, for example voice memos.
- Login accounts.

It can take up to 15 minutes in total to delete data.

Operating requirements

Data can only be deleted at a standstill.

Deleting data

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. Switch on ignition.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "iDrive settings"
4. "Delete personal data"
5. "Delete personal data"
6. "OK"
7. Exit and lock the vehicle.

Deletion is completed after 15 minutes.

If not all data is deleted, repeat deletion if required.

Cancelling deletion

Start the engine to cancel deleting the data.

Connections

Principle

Mobile devices, for example mobile telephones or laptops, can be connected to the vehicle and used in different ways.

General

It is necessary to log onto the vehicle once with the following connection types:

- Bluetooth.
- Internet hotspot.
- Apple CarPlay

Connected devices are then automatically recognised and connected to the vehicle.

The following functions are possible:

Connection type	Function
Mobile telephone via Bluetooth.	Telephony. Office functions.
Audio player via Bluetooth or via USB port.	Music playback.
Smartphone via Bluetooth or USB port.	Using apps.
Mobile device via the Internet hotspot.	Internet use.

Connection type	Function
USB memory via USB port.	Exporting and importing driver profiles. Performing software updates. Importing and exporting stored journeys. Music playback.
Apple iPhone via Apple CarPlay	Operating Apple Carplay apps via iDrive and by voice commands, see the Owner's Handbook for the navigation, entertainment and communication.

Safety note

WARNING

Operating integrated informations systems and communication devices during the journey can distract from traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Only operate the systems or devices if permissible in the traffic situation. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.◄

Displaying device list

All devices registered or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"

A symbol displays which function a device is used for.

Symbol	Function
	"Telephone"
	"Additional telephone"
	"Bluetooth audio"
	"Apps"
	"Internet hotspot"
Apple iPhone via Apple CarPlay	Operating Apple Carplay apps via iDrive and by voice commands.

Bluetooth pairing

Suitable devices

General

Precise information which mobile telephones and mobile devices with Bluetooth interface are supported is available at www.bmw.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur when using unlisted devices or different software versions.

Viewing vehicle identification number and software part number

The vehicle identification number and software part number are necessary so that you can check which devices are supported. You might also need details about the mobile telephone's software version.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth information"
6. "System information"

You have the option of performing a software update, see page 34.

Functional requirements

▷ Suitable device, see page 30.

- Device ready for operation.
- Bluetooth activated on the device and in the vehicle, see page 31.
- If default Bluetooth settings are required on the device, for example visibility, see user manual of the device.
- Any number with a minimum of 4 and a maximum 16 positions is specified as the Bluetooth passkey. Only required for one-time registration.

Activating Bluetooth

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth"

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To be able to use all supported functions of a mobile telephone, it is necessary for the following functions to be activated before registering.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Office"

     Activate the function to transfer SMS messages, e-mails, calendar, tasks, memos and reminders to the vehicle. Costs can be incurred by transferring all data to the vehicle.
   - "Contact pictures"

     Activate the function to have contact pictures displayed.
6. Tilt the Controller to the left.

Pairing mobile device with the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"
5. Select the function for which you would like to use the device.
   - "Telephone"
   - "Bluetooth audio"
   - "Apps"
   - "Apple CarPlay"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.
6. Use the mobile device to search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is shown on the display of the mobile device.

   Select Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
7. Depending on the mobile device, either a control number is displayed, or you will have to enter the control number yourself.
   - Compare the control number shown on the Control Display with the control number in the device display.

     Confirm the control number in the device and on the Control Display.
   - Enter the same control number on the device and using iDrive and confirm.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

If the connection was unsuccessful: What to do if..., see page 36.

USB connection

Principle

Mobile devices with a USB port can be connected to the USB interface.

General

The following devices can be connected to the USB interface:

- Mobile telephones that are supported by the USB interface.

  The snap-in adapter has its own USB port that is automatically connected when an appropriate mobile telephone is inserted.
- Audio devices with USB port, for example MP3 players.
- USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. Formats FAT32 and exFAT are recommended.

Information about suitable USB data storage media is available at www.bmw.com/Bluetooth.

The following uses are possible:

- Exporting and importing of driver profiles, see page 52.
- Playback of music files via USB audio.
- Playback of video films via USB video.
- Importing software updates, see page 34.
- Importing trips.

Connecting a device

USB interface, see page 182

The USB device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

When connecting, bear the following in mind:

- Do not insert the plug forcibly in the USB interface.
- Use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the USB device from mechanical damage.
- Due to the large variety of USB devices available on the market, operation using the vehicle cannot be ensured for every device.
- Do not expose the USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, for example very high temperatures, see the user manual of the device.
- Due to the large variety of different compression techniques, correct playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in every case.
- A connected USB device is supplied with charging current via the USB interface if the device supports this.
- To ensure correct transfer of the stored data, do not charge a USB device from the socket in the vehicle when the device is also connected to the USB interface.
- Depending on how the USB device should be used, it may be necessary to make settings on the USB device, see the user manual of the device.

Unsuitable USB devices:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card reader with several inserts.
- HFS-formatted USB devices.
- MTP devices.
- Devices such as fans or lamps.

Internet connection

General

Up to 8 devices can be connected a the same time using the Internet hotspot.

Functional requirements

- ConnectedDrive contract.
- Data contract with a service provider.
- WiFi-capable device.

- ▷ WiFi activated on the device.
- ▷ Internet hotspot activated on the vehicle.
- ▷ Ignition is switched on.

Activating Internet hotspot

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet hotspot"

Connecting device to Internet hotspot

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"
5. "Internet hotspot"

   Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. On the device, search for WiFi networks. Select network name on the device.
7. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

A data volume must be purchased from a service provider during the first Internet use via the Internet hotspot.

This data volume is used by all devices connected via the Internet hotspot.

Data volume may be available via the ConnectedDrive Store.

Settings

The network name and hotspot code can be changed. In addition, the network name can be hidden to prevent it from being discovered by other devices.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. OPTION Press the button.
5. ▷ "Change hotspot key"

   Enter required hotspot code.

   ▷ "Change hotspot name"

   Enter required network name.

   ▷ "Hide hotspot"

   Activate or deactivate function.
6. Confirm the entry of the hotspot code or the network name:

   OK Select the symbol.

Additional functions

After connecting for the first time

- ▷ The device is connected with the vehicle after a short delay when the engine is running or the ignition switched on.
- ▷ The data saved on the SIM card or in the mobile telephone is transferred to the vehicle following detection.
- ▷ In some devices, certain settings may be necessary, for example authorisation, see user manual of the device.
- ▷ Following one-off registration, the devices are automatically detected and paired again when the ignition is switched on.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated with a registered or connected device.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"

4. Select required device.
5. Select the desired setting.

If a function is assigned to a device, where applicable, it is deactivated when a device is already connected and the device is disconnected.

Connecting a certain device

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Connect device"

Functions assigned to the device before disconnection are reassigned to the device upon reconnection. If applicable, this function is deactivated for a previously connected device.

Disconnecting a device

The connection of the device to the vehicle is disconnected.

The device remains registered and can be connected again, see page 34.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Disconnect device"

Deleting a device

The device is disconnected and deleted from the device list.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Delete device"

Switching telephone and additional telephone

If two mobile telephones are paired with the vehicle, the functions of the telephone and additional telephone can be exchanged.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Swap telephone/additional tel."

Software update

General

The vehicle supports a large number of mobile devices, for example mobile telephones and MP3 players. Software updates are provided for many of the supported devices. Regular updating of the vehicle software keeps the vehicle up to date.

Updates and related, up-to-date information is posted on the website at www.bmw.com/update.

Displaying installed software version

The software version installed in the vehicle is displayed.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Show current version"

If an update has already been applied, select the desired version to show additional information.

Updating software via USB

Do not attempt to update the software unless the vehicle is at a standstill.

Via iDrive:

1. Save the file for the software update onto a USB data storage medium in the main folder.
2. Connect USB data storage medium to a USB interface.
3. "My Vehicle"
4. "iDrive settings"
5. "Software update"
6. "Update software"
7. "USB"
8. "Install software"
9. "OK"
10. Wait for update.
11. Confirm restart of the system.

Updating software via BMW Teleservices

Software updates via BMW Teleservices are country-specific and may be unavailable.

The software is first transferred to the vehicle and can then be installed. The installation can be performed at a different time from that of the transfer.

It is possible to transfer the software when travelling and is also automatically continued after the trip is interrupted. The other functions are available while the transmission is being done. There must be mobile reception for the transmission.

Do not attempt to update the software unless the vehicle is at a standstill.

Via iDrive:

1. Switch on ignition.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "iDrive settings"
4. "Software update"
5. "Update software"
6. "Teleservices"
7. "Load update"

   The update is loaded, but not installed.
8. The update can be installed or removed again.
   - ▷ "Install software"

     The loaded update is installed.

     This step can also be carried out at a later stage.
   - ▷ "Remove update"

     The loaded update is removed.

     The following steps are dispensed with.
9. "OK"
10. Wait for update.
11. Confirm restart of the system.

Restoring software version

The software version of the last software update and the software factory settings can be restored.

Do not attempt to restore the software unless the vehicle is at a standstill.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Restore software"
5. ▷ "Previous version"

   The previous software version is re-saved.
   - ▷ "Software factory settings"

     The first software version is resaved.
6. "Remove software"
7. "OK"
8. Wait for restore.
9. Confirm restart of the system.

Frequently Asked Questions

Information about compatible mobile telephones, see page 30.

All preconditions are met and all necessary steps have been carried out in the specified order. Nevertheless, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations may provide assistance:

Why could the mobile telephone not be registered or connected?

- Check if WiFi is activated in the vehicle.

  Activate WiFi in the vehicle.
- Too many Bluetooth devices are paired to the mobile telephone or the vehicle.

  If necessary, delete connection with other devices.
- Before connecting, delete all known Bluetooth connections from the device list in the mobile telephone.

  Start a new device search.
- Mobile telephone is in power-save mode or the battery is low.

  Charge the mobile telephone using the snap-in adapter, wireless charging cradle or the charging cable.
- If appropriate, only one mobile telephone can be connected to the vehicle, depending on the mobile telephone.

  Unpair the connected mobile telephone from the vehicle and only register and connect one mobile telephone.

Why does the mobile telephone no longer respond?

- The applications on the mobile telephone are no longer functioning.

  Switch the mobile telephone off and on again.
- Ambient temperatures may be too high or too low to operate the mobile telephone.

  Do not subject the mobile telephone to extreme ambient conditions.

Why are no telephone functions possible?

- Possibly the mobile telephone is not configured correctly, for example as a Bluetooth audio device.

  Connect the mobile telephone with the telephone or additional telephone function.

Why are no phone book entries, not all entries or incomplete entries displayed?

- Transfer of the phone book entries is not yet completed.
- Under certain circumstances only the phone book entries saved in the mobile telephone or on the SIM card are transferred.
- It might be that phone book entries with special characters cannot be displayed.
- It may not be possible to transfer contacts from social networks.
- Number of phone book entries to be saved is too high.
- Data volume of the contact too large, for example due to saved information such as memos.

  Reduce data volume of the contact.
- A mobile telephone can only be connected as an audio source or as a telephone.

  Configure mobile telephone and connect with the telephone or additional telephone function.

Why is the quality of the phone connection poor?

- The strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile telephone is adjustable; the procedure varies from mobile telephone to mobile telephone.
- Place the mobile telephone in the snap-in adapter or close to the centre console.
- Insert the mobile telephone in the wireless charging cradle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

▷ Adjust the volume of the microphone and speaker separately.

If all the points on the list have been reviewed and the desired function cannot be run, contact the Hotline, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

Principle

The integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown in the Control Display. It particularly describes the equipment and functions present in the vehicle.

Components of the integrated Owner's Handbook

The integrated Owner's Handbook consists of four parts, which provide various levels of information or access possibilities.

Quick Reference

Important information is found in the quick reference for the operation of the vehicle, the operation of fundamental vehicle functions and in case of breakdown. This information can also be displayed during the journey.

Search by pictures

Using the search by pictures, information and descriptions can be searched using pictures. For example, this is particularly helpful when the description of a piece of equipment is needed, which cannot be named.

Key word search

Here, information and descriptions can be searched via the index by directly entering a search term.

Animations

The animations explain the basic functions of selected systems.

Selecting components

1. 

Press the button.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "Owner's Handbook"
4. Select the desired setting.

Scrolling within the Owner's Handbook

Turn the Controller until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context-sensitive help - Owner's Handbook for the currently selected function

Suitable information can be displayed directly.

Calling up with iDrive operation

Switch to the Options menu directly from the application on the Control Display:

1. 

Press the button.
2. "Owner's Handbook"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Calling up with display of a Check Control message

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Handbook"

Switching between function and Owner's Handbook

You can use the Control Display to switch from a function, for example radio, to the Owner's Handbook, and then back and forth between the two displays:

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Owner's Handbook"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Handbook.
4. OPTION Press the button again to switch back to the last displayed function.
5. BACK Press the button again to switch back to the last displayed page of the Owner's Handbook.

To switch continuously between the last displayed function and the last displayed page of the Owner's Handbook, repeat steps 4 and 5. As you do so, new screens are opened.

Favourites buttons

General

The jumps to the Owner's Handbook can be saved on favourites buttons, see page 22, and called up directly.

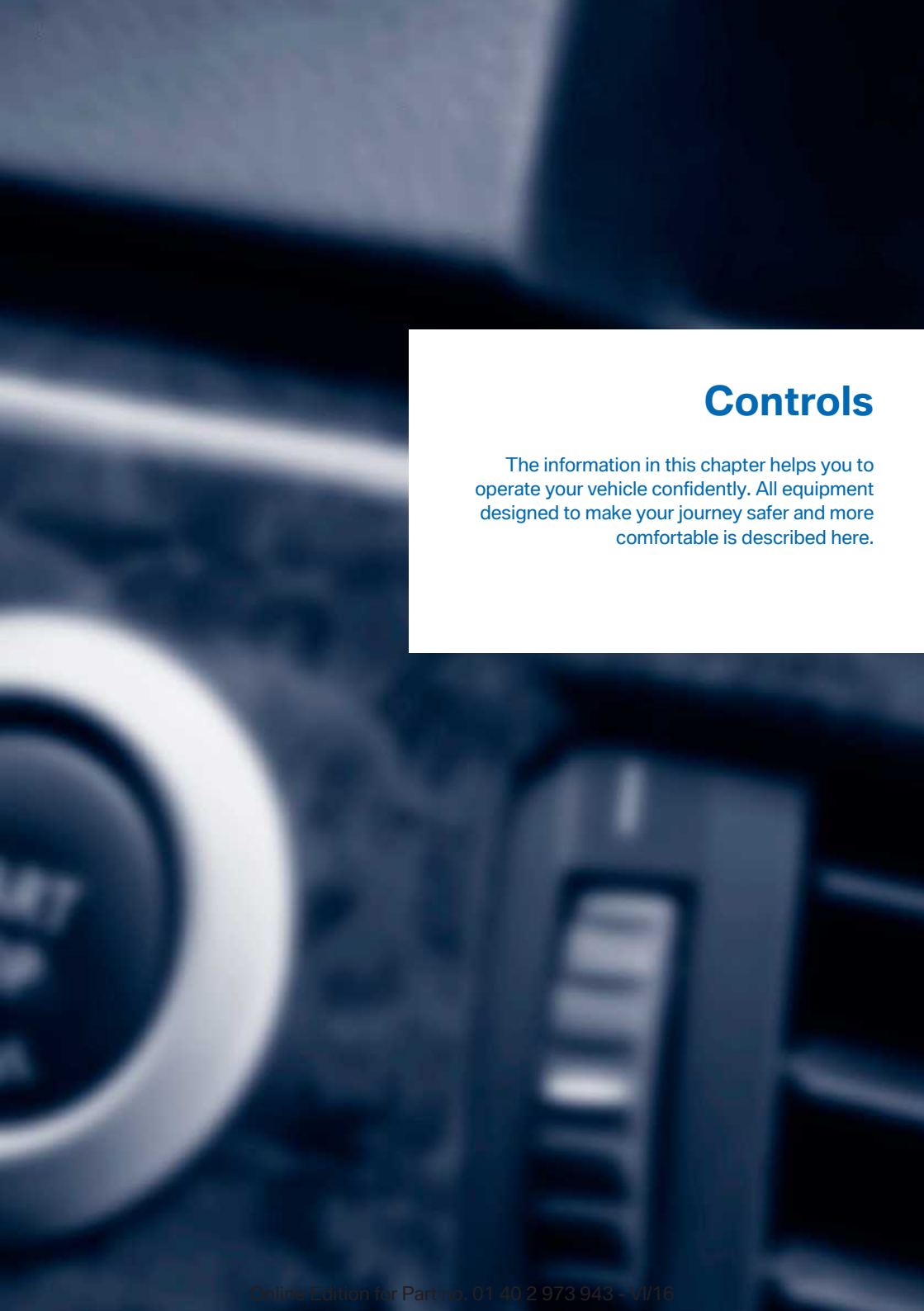
Saving

1. Select required jump using iDrive:
   - "Quick reference"
   - "Picture search"
   - "Keyword search"
   - "Animations"
2. 1…8 Press and hold required favourites button for more than 2 seconds.

Using

1…8 Press the appropriate button.

Owner's Handbook is displayed directly with the selected jump.



Controls

The information in this chapter helps you to operate your vehicle confidently. All equipment designed to make your journey safer and more comfortable is described here.

Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Remote control

General

The delivery specification includes two remote controls with integrated keys.

Every remote control contains a replaceable battery. Replacing the battery, see page 44.

The functions of buttons may be set depending on equipment and country variant. Settings, see page 54.

For each remote control, personal settings are saved in the vehicle. Driver profiles, see page 52.

Further information on servicing is also saved in the remote controls Service data in the remote control, see page 241

Safety instructions

WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. The vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. Danger of injury. Carry the remote control with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.◄

WARNING

If the vehicle is locked from the outside, it cannot be unlocked from the inside in some country versions.

If persons must remain in the vehicle for an extended period of time and are exposed to extreme heat or cold, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.◄

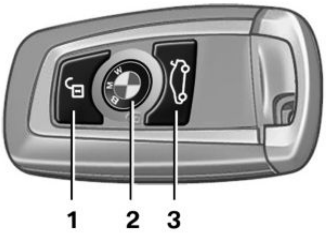
WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- Pressing the start/stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engage selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

Risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◄

Overview



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

3 Opening/closing tailgate

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Unlocking

Press the button on the remote control.

Depending on the settings, see page 54, the following entrances are unlocked.

- The driver door and the fuel filler flap.
- All doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler flap.

The following functions are also carried out:

- The settings saved in the driver profile, see page 52, are applied again.
- The interior light and courtesy light are switched on. This function is not available if the interior light was switched off manually.
- The welcome light is switched on if this function was activated.
- Exterior mirrors folded in using comfort closing are folded out.
- With anti-theft system: The anti-theft system is switched off.
- The alarm system, see page 55, is switched off.

The light functions might be dependent on the ambient brightness.

Press remote control button twice in direct succession to activate comfort memory.

When a door is opened, the window is lowered further to make it easier to get in. This function must be activated in the settings, see page 54.

Comfort opening

Keep the button on the remote control pressed after unlocking.

The windows and Glass Roof are opened for as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Locking

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press the button on the remote control.

- All doors, tailgate and fuel filler flap are locked.
- With anti-theft system: The anti-theft system is switched on. It prevents the doors from being able to be unlocked using the locking buttons or the door openers.
- The alarm system, see page 55, is switched on.

Comfort closing

Safety note

WARNING

Body parts can be trapped during comfort closing. Danger of injury. During comfort closing, make sure that the area of movement is free.◀

Closing

Keep the button on the remote control pressed after locking.

The windows and the Glass Roof are closed for as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Exterior mirrors are folded in.

With the hazard warning lights switched on, the exterior mirror is not folded in.

Switching on interior light and courtesy light

With the vehicle locked, press the button on the remote control.

This function is not available if the interior light was switched off manually.

The light functions might be dependent on the ambient brightness.

If the button is pressed again within 10 seconds of locking, passenger compartment protection and tilt alarm sensor of alarm system, see page 56, are switched off. After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

Tailgate

General

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.

Depending on the equipment and country version it can be set whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the remote control. Adjust the settings, see page 54.

In some equipment versions, doors are also unlocked if appropriate

Safety instructions

WARNING

Operating the tailgate can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◄

NOTE

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◄

NOTE

Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window and the heating conductor during the journey. Danger of damage to property. Cover the edges and make sure that sharp objects cannot strike the rear window.◄

Opening

Press the button on the remote control for approximately one second.

Closing

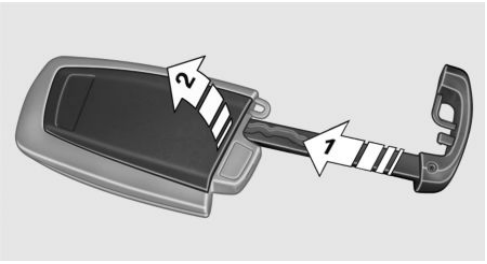
Keep button pressed on remote control until tailgate has closed.

Releasing the button stops the movement.

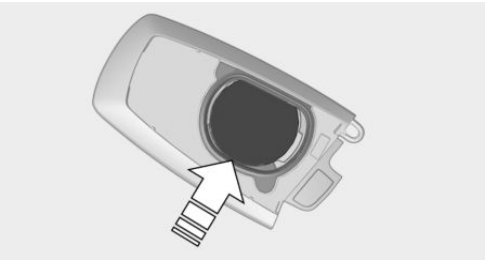
Boot floor must be closed or else tailgate cannot be closed.

Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control, see page 46.
2. Place integrated key under the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and pry off the cover with a lever motion of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Use a pointed object to push the battery in the direction of the arrow and lift it out.



4. Insert a new type CR 2450 battery with the positive side facing upwards.
5. Press the cover back into position.

Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them into an authorised collecting point.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

New remote controls

New remote controls are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Blocking remote controls

A lost remote control can be blocked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Malfunction

General

A Check Control message is shown.

Detection of the remote control by the vehicle may be disrupted by the following circumstances, amongst others:

- The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, see page 44.
- Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- Shielding of the remote control by metallic objects.

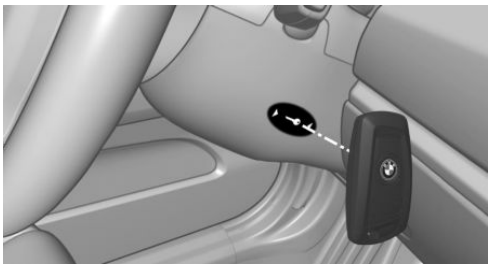
  Do not transport the remote control together with metallic objects.
- Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the mobile phone.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.
- Interference in radio transmission due to a charging procedure in mobile devices, for example charging a mobile telephone.
- The remote control is located in the immediate vicinity of the wireless charging cradle.

  Place the remote control somewhere else.

If there is a malfunction, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key, see page 45.

Starting the engine in the event of emergency detection of the remote control



1. Hold the back of the remote control against the mark on the steering column.
2. Start the engine within 10 seconds.

If the remote control is not detected, change the position of the remote control slightly and repeat the procedure.

Integrated key

General

With the integrated key, the driver's door can be unlocked and locked without remote control.

The integrated key also fits the glove box on the front passenger side.

Use the integrated key to operate the key switch for front passenger airbags, see page 120.

Safety instructions

WARNING

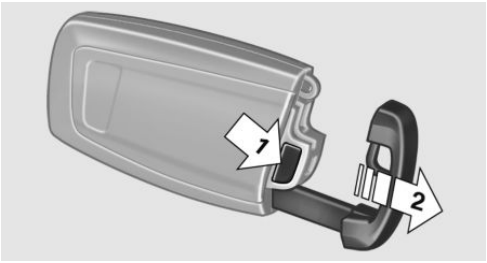
If the vehicle is locked from the outside, it cannot be unlocked from the inside in some country versions.

If persons must remain in the vehicle for an extended period of time and are exposed to extreme heat or cold, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.◄

NOTE

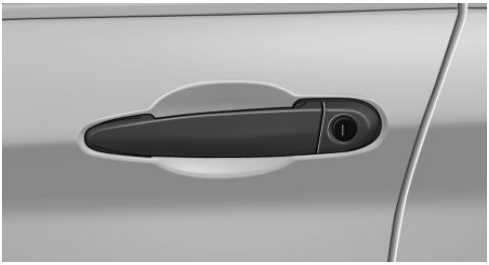
The door lock is firmly connected to the door. The door handle can be moved. Pulling the door handle when the integrated key is inserted can damage the paint or the key. Danger of damage to property. Pull out the integrated key before pulling on the outer door handle.◄

Removing



Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out key, arrow 2.

Unlocking/locking using the door lock



Unlock or lock the driver's door using the integrated key in the door lock.

The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Alarm system is triggered if the vehicle has been unlocked using the door lock.

To end this alarm, unlock the vehicle with the remote control or turn on the ignition, with special ID of the remote control, see page 45, as necessary.

Button for central locking system

General

In the event of an accident of sufficient severity, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning lights and interior lights illuminate.

Overview

Button for central locking system.

Unlocking and locking

Press button for central locking to lock or unlock vehicle when front doors are closed.

- ▷ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- ▷ Locking does not activate anti-theft protection for vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Unlocking and opening

- Press  button for central locking system to unlock doors together and then pull door opener above armrest.
- Pull twice on door opener on door to be opened: first pull unlocks door, second pull opens door. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Principle

Access to the vehicle is possible without activating the remote control.

It is sufficient to have the remote control with you, for example in a trouser pocket.

The vehicle automatically recognises the remote control when it is in the immediate vicinity or the interior of the vehicle.

General

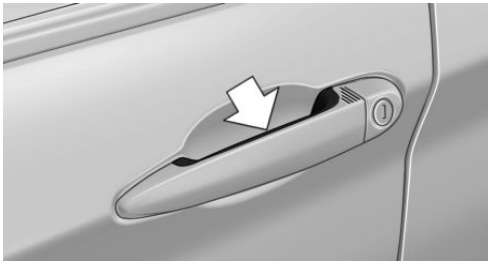
Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking/locking the vehicle.
- Comfort closing.
- Opening the tailgate.
- Open/close tailgate with a contactless method.

Functional requirements

- To lock, the remote control must be located outside the vehicle in the area of the doors.
- Approximately 2 seconds need to elapse before the vehicle can be unlocked and locked again.

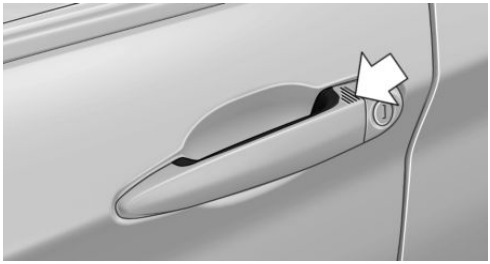
Unlocking



Firmly grab the handle on the driver's or front passenger's door, arrow.

This corresponds to pressing the button on the remote control.

Locking



Use your finger to touch area on door handle of driver's or front passenger's door for approximately 1 second, without gripping door handle.

This corresponds to pressing the button on the remote control.

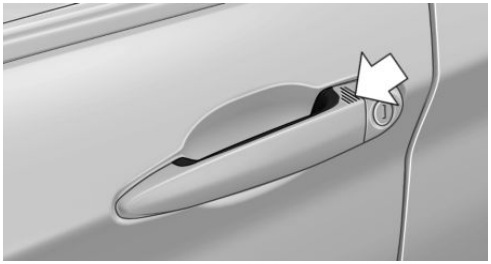
Comfort closing

Safety note

WARNING

Body parts can be trapped during comfort closing. Danger of injury. During comfort closing, make sure that the area of movement is free.◀

Closing



Use your finger to touch area on door handle of driver's or front passenger's door and keep your finger there without gripping door handle.

Corresponds to pressing and holding the button on the remote control.

In addition to locking, windows and Glass Roof are closed and exterior mirrors are folded in.

Opening the tailgate

General

If the tailgate is opened using Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Operating the tailgate can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◄

NOTE

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◄

NOTE

Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window and the heating conductor during the journey. Danger of damage to property. Cover the edges and make sure that sharp objects cannot strike the rear window.◄

Opening

Press the button on the tailgate.

Opening and closing the tailgate contactlessly

Principle

The tailgate can be opened and closed contactlessly if you carry the remote control. Two sensors detect a foot movement forwards in the middle of the rear area and the tailgate opens or closes.

General

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.

If the remote control is within the sensor range, the tailgate can be accidentally opened or closed by an unintentional or supposedly recognized foot movement.

The sensor range extends to approximately 1.50 m, 5 ft behind the rear area.

If the tailgate is opened with a contactless method, locked doors are not unlocked.

Safety instructions

WARNING

During operation without contact, there is a risk of touching vehicle parts, for example the hot exhaust system. Danger of injury. Make sure you are standing securely when you perform the foot movement, and do not touch the vehicle.◄

WARNING

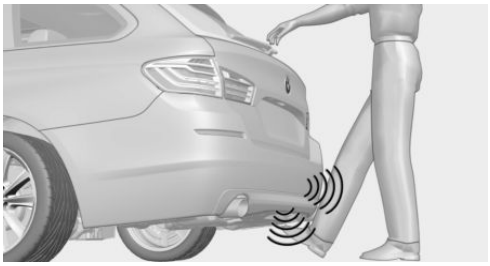
Operating the tailgate can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◄

NOTE

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◄

Foot movement to be undertaken

1. Stand in the centre behind the vehicle, approximately an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. A foot must move as far as possible under the vehicle in the direction of travel and be withdrawn again immediately. In this movement, the leg must pass through the range of both sensors.



Opening

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The tailgate opens, regardless of whether it was locked or unlocked.

The hazard warning lights flash before opening.

Closing

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The warning indicator flashes and an audible signal sounds before the tailgate closes.

The closing operation may be interrupted due to a new foot movement.

Malfunction

Detection of the remote control by the vehicle may be disrupted by the following circumstances, amongst others:

- The battery of the remote control is discharged. Changing the battery, see page 44.
- Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- Shielding of the remote control by metallic objects.

  Do not transport the remote control together with metallic objects.
- Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the mobile phone.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.

In case of a fault, unlock and lock the vehicle with the buttons on the remote control or with the integrated key, see page 45.

Tailgate

General

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.

Depending on the equipment and country version it can be set whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the remote control. Adjust the settings, see page 54.

In some equipment versions, doors are also unlocked if appropriate

Safety instructions

WARNING

Operating the tailgate can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◄

NOTE

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◄

NOTE

Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window and the heating conductor during the journey. Danger of damage to property. Cover the edges and make sure that sharp objects cannot strike the rear window.◄

Opening and closing

Opening

Adjusting the opening height

The extent to which the tailgate opens can be set.

When setting the opening height, make sure that there is a space of at least 10 cm, approximately 4 in above the tailgate.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired opening height is reached.
6. Press the Controller.

From outside

▷ Without Comfort Access: unlock vehicle.

Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷  Press the button on the remote control for approximately one second.

When the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically up to the set opening height.

From inside

 Press the button in the driver's footwell.

When the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically up to the set opening height.

Cancellation of the opening operation

The opening procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

▷ If the vehicle begins to move.

▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate.

▷ By pressing the button on the remote control.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

- By pressing the button in the driver's footwell.

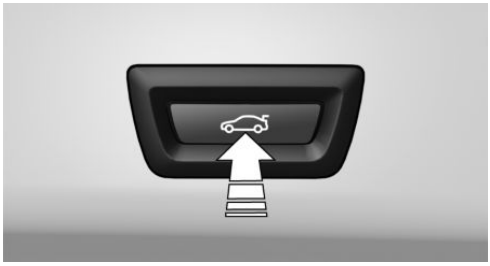
Closing

From outside

- Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.
-  Keep button pressed on remote control until tailgate has closed.

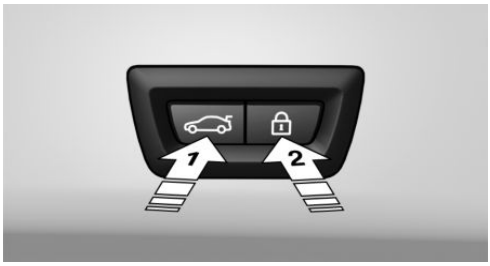
Using the inside of the tailgate

Without Comfort Access:



Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:



- Press button on the inside of tailgate, arrow 1.
- Press the button, arrow 2.

  The vehicle is locked after the tailgate has been closed. To do this, the driver's door must be closed and the remote control must be outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the tailgate.

Cancellation of the closing operation

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- When driving off suddenly.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the tailgate.
- By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate.
- By releasing the button on the remote control.

Malfunction

Safety note

WARNING

A locked tailgate can unexpectedly move during manual operation. Danger of injury or damage to property. Do not manually operate a locked tailgate. Have a check performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

Manual operation

Operate the unlocked tailgate manually slowly and without a sudden movement.

Only light pressure is required to fully close the tailgate. The actual closing operation is automatic.

Emergency release

Pull the handle in the boot.

Tailgate is unlocked.

Driver profiles

Principle

Individual settings of several drivers can be saved in the driver profiles and called up at a later point in time.

General

Three profiles are provided, in which personal vehicle settings can be saved. Each remote control is allocated to one of these driver profiles.

When the vehicle is unlocked with a remote control, the allocated driver profile is activated. All the settings saved in the driver profile are applied automatically.

If several drivers each use their own remote control, the vehicle will adapt to their personal settings when it is unlocked. These settings are also resaved if the vehicle is used in the intervening period by someone with a different remote control.

Changes to settings are saved automatically in the currently used driver profile.

If a different driver profile is selected via iDrive, the settings saved there are automatically applied. The new driver profile is allocated to the remote control currently used.

In addition, a guest profile is available that is not allocated to any remote control. It can be used for making settings on the vehicle without changing the personal driver profiles.

Settings

Settings for the following systems and functions are saved in the active profile. The extent of settings that can be saved depends on the country and equipment.

- Unlocking and locking.
- Light.
- Air conditioning.
- Radio.
- Instrument cluster.
- Favourites button.
- Volumes, sound.
- Control Display.
- Navigation.
- TV.
- Park Distance Control PDC.
- Rear-view camera.
- Side view.
- Top view.
- Head-Up Display.
- Drive experience switch.
- Driver's seat position, exterior mirror position, steering wheel position.
- Intelligent Safety.
- Lane change warning.

Profile management

Selecting driver profile

Regardless of the currently used remote control, another driver profile can be called up. This way, the personal vehicle settings can be called up, if the vehicle was not unlocked with the own key.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

- The settings saved in the called-up driver profile are applied automatically.
- The called up driver profile is allocated to the currently used remote control.
- If the driver profile has already been allocated to another remote control, this driver profile applies to both remote controls.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Using a guest profile

With the guest profile, individual settings can be made that are not saved in any of the three driver profiles.

This can be beneficial if a driver without their own driver profile uses the vehicle temporarily.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Drive off (guest)"
4. "OK"

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not allocated to the currently used remote control.

Renaming the driver profile

To avoid mixing up the driver profiles, it is possible to assign a personal name to the currently used driver profile.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be renamed.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Change driver profile name"
5. Enter profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

Resetting the driver profile

The settings of the active driver profile are reset to factory settings.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be reset.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Reset driver profile"

Exporting driver profile

Most of the settings of the currently used driver profile can be exported.

This may be useful for backing up and calling up personal settings, for example, before taking the vehicle into a Service Centre. The backed up driver profiles can be taken into a different vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be exported.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Export driver profile"
5. ▷ "USB device"

   Select the USB storage medium, see page 32, if necessary.

   ▷ ConnectedDrive.

Importing driver profile

The existing settings of the currently used driver profile are overwritten by the settings of the imported driver profile.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be overwritten.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Import driver profile"
5. Select the medium via which the driver profile was exported.

   ▷ USB storage medium: "USB device"

   Select the USB storage medium if necessary.

   ▷ ConnectedDrive.
6. Select driver profile.

Display driver profiles when starting

The driver profiles can be shown on every start to select the desired profile.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Show driver profiles at start"

Settings

General

Various settings are possible for opening and closing, depending on the equipment and country variant.

These settings are is saved for the currently used driver profile, see page 52.

Unlocking

Doors

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Driver's door" or "All doors"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Driver's door"

     Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.
   - "Comfort entry"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

     Pressing the button on the remote control twice in direct succession causes the window to be lowered further when the door is subsequently opened.

Tailgate

Depending on the equipment and country version, these settings are not provided.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Tailgate" or "Tailgate and door(s)"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Tailgate"

     Depending on equipment, tailgate is unlocked or opened.
   - "Tailgate and door(s)"

     Depending on equipment, tailgate is unlocked or opened and doors are unlocked.

Acknowledgement signal of the vehicle

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Flash for lock/unlock"

   Unlocking is acknowledged by flashing twice, locking by flashing once.

Automatic unlocking

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Unlock at end of journey"

   After the drive-ready state is switched on, press the start/stop button to unlock the locked vehicle automatically.

Setting the last seat and mirror position

When the vehicle is unlocked, the last set positions of the driver's seat and exterior mirrors are set.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Last seat position automatic"

Alarm system

General

The alarm system responds to the following changes when the vehicle is locked:

- Unauthorised opening of a door, the bonnet or the tailgate.
- Movements in the interior.
- The vehicle's incline changes, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away.
- There is an interruption in the power supply from the battery.

The alarm system indicates these changes visually and audibly:

- Audible alarm.
- Switching on the hazard warning lights.

Switching on and off

At the same time as unlocking and locking the vehicle by remote control or using the Comfort Access the alarm system is switched on and off.

Door lock with alarm system switched on

Alarm system is deactivated if the vehicle is unlocked using the door lock.

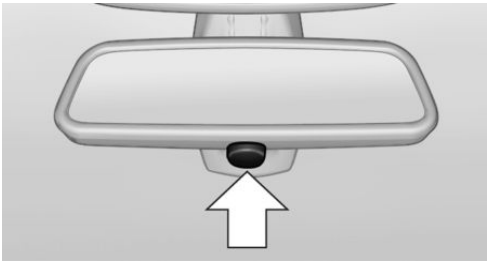
Switch off the alarm, see page 56.

Tailgate with alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even with the alarm system switched on.

On closing the tailgate, it is locked again and monitored, as long as the doors are locked. The hazard warning lights flash once.

Indicator lamp on the rear-view mirror



- Indicator lamp flashes every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- Indicator lamp flashes for approximately 10 seconds before it flashes every 2 seconds:

  Interior movement detector and tilt alarm sensor are not active because doors, bonnet or tailgate are not closed correctly. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  If the access points that are still open are closed then the interior protection and tilt alarm sensor are switched on.
- The indicator lamp no longer illuminates after the vehicle has been unlocked:

  No attempt has been made to tamper with the vehicle.
- The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the ignition is switched on, but for no longer than approximately five minutes:

  The alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The incline of the vehicle is monitored.

Alarm system responds, for example, when there is an attempt to steal a wheel or when towing away.

Interior movement detector

To ensure perfect functioning, the windows and Glass Roof must be closed.

Avoiding false alarms

General

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior protection may trigger an alarm without any unauthorised activity taking place.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- In washing bays or car washes.
- In two-level garages.
- During transport via motorail, car ferry or trailer.
- When there are animals in the vehicle.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior protection can be switched off for such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector

Press the button on the remote control again within 10 seconds, as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp illuminates for approximately 2 seconds and then flashes again.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector are switched off until the next time the vehicle is locked.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if necessary using special ID of remote control, see page 45.
- With Comfort Access:

  If you are carrying the remote control, firmly grab the handle on the driver's or front passenger's door.

Power windows

Safety instructions

WARNING

Operating the windows can lead to parts of the body or objects becoming trapped. Danger of injury or damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the windows is free.◄

WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- Pressing the start/stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engage selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

Risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◄

Overview

Power windows

Safety switch

Opening

▷  Push the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window opens as long as the switch is held.

▷  Push the switch past the resistance point.

The window opens automatically. The movement is stopped by pressing the switch again.

Comfort opening via the remote control, see page 43.

Closing

▷  Pull the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window closes as long as the switch is held.

▷  Pull the switch past the resistance point.

The window closes automatically. Pulling the switch again stops the movement.

Comfort closing using the remote control, see page 43.

Closing using Comfort Access, see page 47.

After switching off the ignition

Windows can still be operated:

▷ For some time with radio ready state switched on.

▷ For approximately 1 minute with the ignition switched off.

Anti-trap mechanism

General

If the closing power exceeds a certain value on closing a window, the closing operation is interrupted.

The window opens again slightly.

Safety note

 WARNING

Accessories on the windows, for example aerials, can impair the anti-trap mechanism. Danger of injury. Do not attach any accessories in the area of movement of the windows.◄

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism

If an external danger or ice does not allow you to close the windows normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the  switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The anti-trap mechanism is restricted and the window opens slightly when the closing force exceeds a certain value.

2. Pull the  switch past the resistance point again within approximately 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Safety switch

General

The safety switch can be used to prevent children from opening and closing the rear windows by means of the switches in the rear, for example.

In an accident of corresponding severity, the safety function is automatically switched off.

Switching on and off

 Press the button.

When the safety function is switched on, the LED is illuminated.

Glass Roof, electrical

General

The Glass Roof and the sun blind can be operated separately or together with the same switch.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Operating the Glass Roof can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the Glass Roof is free.◄

WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- Pressing the start/stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engage selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

Risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◄

Overview

Raising the Glass Roof

Press the top of the switch.

- The closed Glass Roof is raised.
- The opened Glass Roof closes to the raised position. The sun blind does not move.

Opening/closing Glass Roof and sun blind

- Push and hold the switch in the desired direction as far as the resistance point.

  The Glass Roof and sun blind open jointly as long as the switch is held.

  The Glass Roof closes as long as the switch is held. The sun blind can be closed by hand.

- Push the switch beyond the resistance point in the desired direction.

  Glass Roof and sun blind open automatically.

  The Glass Roof closes automatically. The sun blind can be closed by hand.

  Movement is stopped by pressing switch upwards.

Comfort opening via the remote control, see page 43.

Comfort closing using the remote control, see page 43.

Closing using Comfort Access, see page 47.

Comfort position

If Glass Roof is not completely opened by automatic function, this means comfort position has been reached. In this position, wind noise inside vehicle is at lowest level.

You can continue the movement by subsequently pressing the button.

After switching off the ignition

The Glass Roof can still be opened or closed for approximately 1 minute after the ignition has been switched off.

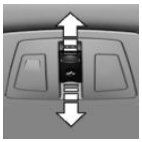
Anti-trap mechanism

General

If the closing power of the Glass Roof exceeds a certain value, the closing operation is interrupted from approximately the half-open position, or during closing from the raised position. The Glass Roof opens again slightly.

Closing without anti-trap mechanism from open position

In the event of danger from the outside, proceed as follows:



1. Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it there.

   The anti-trap mechanism is restricted and the Glass Roof opens slightly when the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Press the switch forwards once again beyond the resistance point and hold until the Glass Roof closes without the anti-trap mechanism. Ensure that the closing area is clear.

Closing without anti-trap mechanism from raised position

If there is a danger from the outside slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it there.

The Glass Roof closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Initialising after power failure

General

The Glass Roof functions may be restricted after a power cut during the opening or closing operation.

The system can be initialised when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During the initialisation the Glass Roof closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Ensure that the closing area is clear.

Initialising the system

Press the top of the switch and hold until the initialisation is complete:

Initialisation begins within 15 seconds and is complete when the Glass Roof is fully closed.

Adjusting

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Safe seated position

A seated position that suitably reflects the requirements of the occupants is essential for relaxed driving with minimum fatigue.

In the event of an accident, the seated position plays an important role together with:

- Seat belts, see page 63.
- Head restraints, see page 66.
- Airbags.

Seats

Safety instructions

WARNING

Seat adjustment during the journey can lead to unexpected seat movements. You could lose control of the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Only adjust the seat on the driver side when at a standstill.◄

WARNING

If the seat backrest is angled back too far, the protective effect of the seat belt will no longer be guaranteed. There is a danger of slipping under the seat belt in the event of an accident. Danger of injury or life. Set the seat before starting the journey. Place the seat backrest in the most upright possible position, and do not change it during the journey.◄

WARNING

Danger of trapping when moving the seats. Danger of injury or damage to property. Before making the setting, make sure that the movement area of the seat is clear.◄

Centre seat

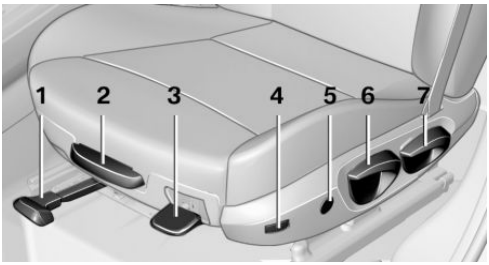
The 4 Series Gran Coupé is designed as a 4+1 seater.

The usability of the centre seat is restricted. The recommendation is only to put people in these seats, for whom the backrest can serve as a substitute for the head restraint.

Adjust head restraints, see page 66.

Manually adjustable seats

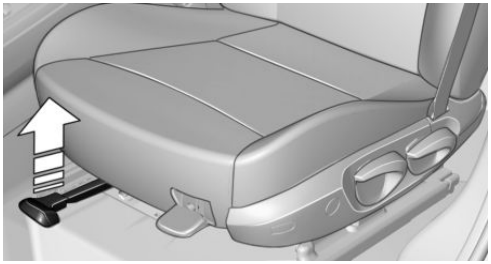
Overview



1 Forward/back
2 Thigh support
3 Seat angle
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Height
7 Backrest angle

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

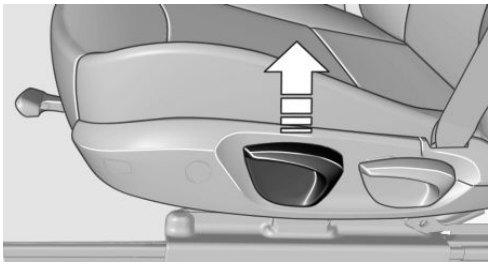
Forward/back



Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly.

Height

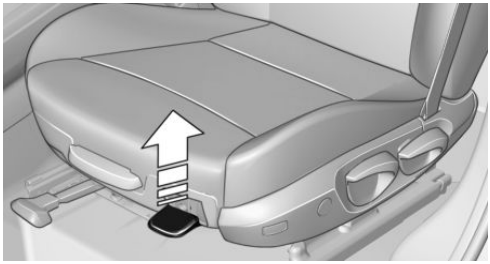


Pull the lever and add or remove pressure on the seat as required.

Backrest angle

Pull the lever and add or remove pressure on the backrest as required.

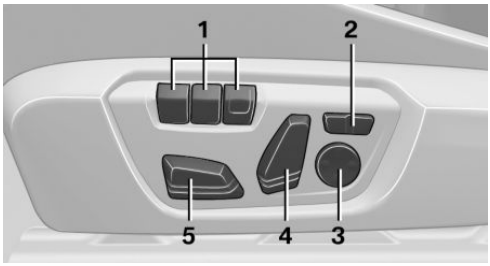
Seat angle



Pull the lever and move the seat until the desired angle is reached. After releasing the lever, sit on and get up out of the seat to make sure it engages properly.

Electrically adjustable seats

Overview

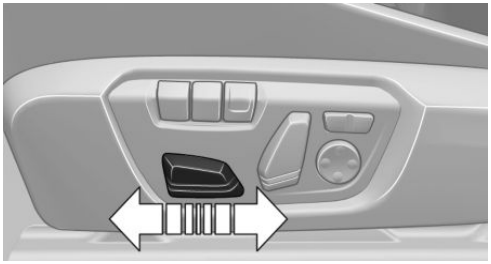


1 Seat and mirror memory
2 Backrest width
3 Lumbar support
4 Backrest angle
5 Forward/back, height, seat angle

General

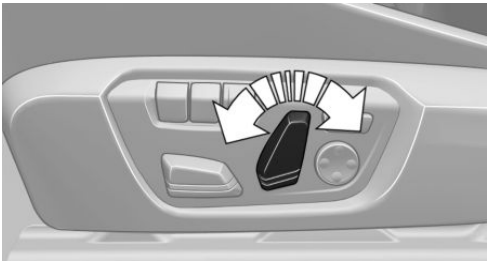
The driver's seat adjustment is saved for the currently used profile. When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, this position is called up automatically if the function for this has been activated.

Forward/back



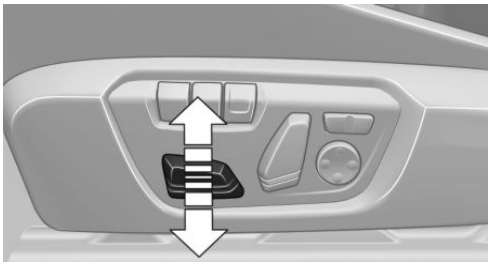
Press the switch forwards or backwards.

Backrest angle



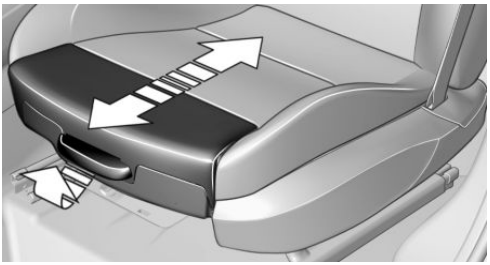
Tip the switch forwards or backwards.

Height



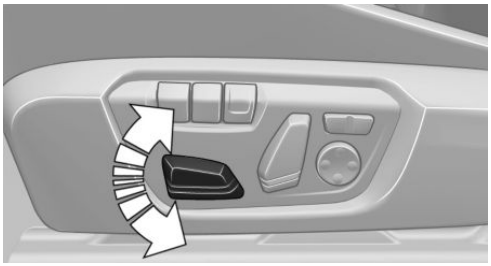
Press the switch up or down.

Thigh support



Pull the lever on the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

Seat angle



Tip the switch up or down.

Lumbar support

The curvature of the backrest can be changed in such a way that the lumbar region, the lordosis, is supported. The upper edge of the pelvis and the spinal column are supported to encourage an upright posture.

- Press the switch at the front/rear:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- Press the switch at the top/bottom:

  The curvature is shifted upwards/downwards.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Backrest width

The width of the backrest can be changed via the side cushions to adjust the lateral support.

Press the button on the corresponding side.

Seat heating, front

Overview

Seat heating

Switching on

Press the button once per temperature stage.

Maximum temperature is indicated by three LEDs.

If the journey is continued within about 15 minutes after a temporary stop, the seat heating is automatically activated with the last temperature set.

If ECO PRO is activated, the heating power is reduced.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the LEDs no longer illuminate.

Seat heating, rear

Overview

Seat heating

Switching on

Press the button once per temperature stage.

Maximum temperature is indicated by three LEDs.

If the journey is continued within about 15 minutes after a temporary stop, the seat heating is automatically activated with the last temperature set.

If ECO PRO is activated, the heating power is reduced.

Switching off

Press and hold the button until the LEDs no longer illuminate.

Seat belts

Number of seat belts

For the safety of the vehicle occupants, the vehicle is equipped with five seat belts. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Both belt buckles incorporated into the rear seat are intended for those sitting on the left and right.

The inner belt buckle of the rear seat is exclusively intended for the person sitting in the middle.

General

Before every journey, make sure that all occupants have fastened their seat belts. The airbags are a complementary safety feature and not a substitute for the seat belts.

When it is applied, guide the seat belt slowly from the bracket.

The belt anchorage is suitable for adults of any stature as long as the seat is correctly adjusted.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Using a seat belt to restrain more than one person nullifies the protective effect of the seatbelt. Danger of injury or life. Only restrain one person with each seat belt. Do not place infants and children on your lap, but instead restrain them with the child restraint systems provided, and secure them accordingly.◀

WARNING

The protective effect of the seat belts can be restricted or they can be rendered ineffective if put on incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident or braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury or life. Make sure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts correctly.◀

WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the seat belt strap by polishes, oils and chemicals and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The seat belt strap should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. Seat belts should not be worn with seat belt straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is illegal to carry an infant or a child on the occupant's lap.

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.◀

WARNING

No modifications or additions should be made by the user that will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.◀

WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not ensured. Danger of injury or life. Lock the wider rear backrest when using the middle seat belt.◀

Correct seat belt use

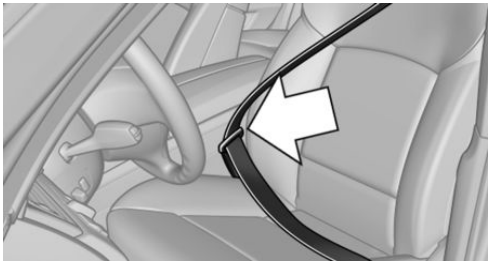
- Place the seat belt tightly over the pelvis and shoulder as close as possible to the body and without twisting.
- Make sure that the seat belt is positioned low at the hip in the area of the pelvis. The seat belt must not press on the midriff.
- The seat belt must not pass across the neck. It should not be pulled or jammed across sharp edges or breakable objects.

- Avoid bulky clothing.
- Regularly pull the seat belt in the upper-body area taut.

Adjustment for automatic retracting seat belts

- Draw the buckle tongue attached to the seat belt across the body and press it into the buckle catch until a 'click' is heard.
- Adjustment of the belt length is very important. To adjust the lap belt and check whether the buckle has locked correctly, pull upwards on the shoulder strap until the lap belt fits tightly.
- The length of the diagonal shoulder strap adjusts itself automatically to allow freedom of movement.
- To release the seat belt, press the button on the buckle catch unit.

Fastening the seat belt



The seat belt buckle must be heard to engage.

Automatically tightening the seat belt

If the seat belt is fastened, the seat belt strap is automatically fastened once when driving off.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back up to the reel mechanism.

Seat belt reminder for driver's and front seat passenger seat

A Check Control message is shown. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

The seat belt reminder is activated when the seat belt on the driver's side is not fastened.

On some country versions, the seat belt reminder is also activated above approximately 10 km/h, 6 mph if the front passenger seat belt is not fastened and if heavy objects are located on the seat.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated after the engine starts.

- Green: seat belt fastened on the corresponding rear seat.
- Red: seat belt not fastened on the corresponding rear seat.

The seat belt reminder will also be activated if a rear seat belt is unfastened during the journey.

Damaged seat belts

WARNING

The protective effect of the seat belts can be restricted or nullified in the following situations:

- Seat belts are damaged, contaminated or have been modified in another way.
- Belt buckle is damaged or heavily contaminated.
- Belt tensioners or belt retractors have been modified.

Seat belts can be damaged in an accident without the damage necessarily being apparent. Danger of injury or life. Do not modify seat belts, belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors and belt anchor points; also, keep them clean. After an accident, have the seat belts in-

spected at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◄

Front head restraints

Safety notes

WARNING

Head and neck injuries can result due to the lack of protective effect if head restraints are removed or have not been adjusted correctly. Danger of injury. Before the journey, install head restraints at the occupied seats and make sure that the middle of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.◄

WARNING

Body parts can be trapped when moving the head restraint. Danger of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the area of movement is free.◄

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. Danger of injury.

- Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.◄

Correctly adjusted head restraint

General

Head restraints adjusted to the correct height reduce the risk of injuries to the neck in the event of an accident.

Height

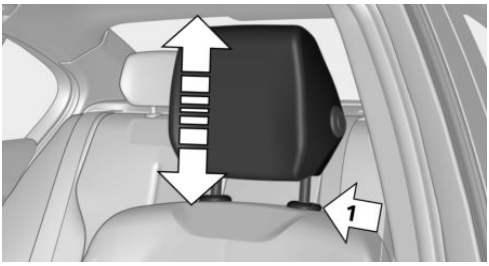
Adjust the head restraint so that its centre is approximately at the height of your eyes.

Spacing

Adjust the spacing so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

If necessary, adjust the spacing using the incline of the seat backrest.

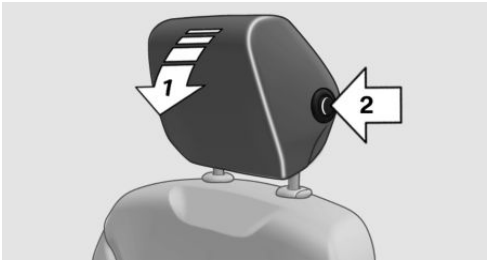
Adjusting height



- Upwards: push head restraint upwards.
- Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.

Incline

Three different positions can be set.

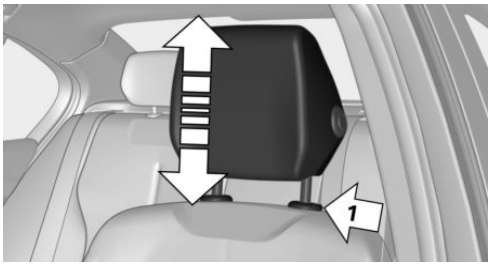


- Forwards: pull upper edge of head restraint forwards, arrow 1.
- Back: press button, arrow 2. The head restraint folds into the rearmost position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no-one will be sitting on the seat in question.



1. Raise head restraint until resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.

Rear head restraints

Safety instructions

WARNING

Head and neck injuries can result due to the lack of protective effect if head restraints are removed or have not been adjusted correctly. Danger of injury. Before the journey, install head restraints at the occupied seats and make sure that the middle of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.◄

WARNING

Body parts can be trapped when moving the head restraint. Danger of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the area of movement is free.◄

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. Danger of injury.

- Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.◄

Correctly adjusted head restraint

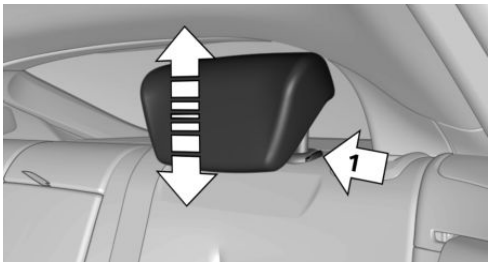
General

Head restraints adjusted to the correct height reduce the risk of injuries to the neck in the event of an accident.

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its centre is approximately at the height of your eyes.

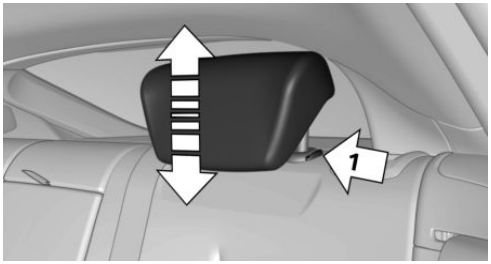
Adjusting height



- Upwards: push head restraint upwards.
- Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no-one will be sitting on the seat in question.



1. Raise head restraint until resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.

Seat and mirror memory

Principle

Two different positions for driver's seat and exterior mirrors can be saved and recalled per profile. Settings for backrest width and lumbar support are not saved.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Using the memory function during the journey can lead to unexpected seat movements. You could lose control of the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Only call up the memory function at a standstill.◄

WARNING

Danger of trapping when moving the seats. Danger of injury or damage to property. Before making the setting, make sure that the movement area of the seat is clear.◄

Overview

Saving

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Set desired position.
3. SET Press the button. LED in button is illuminated.
4. Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. LED turns off.

SET Button was pressed inadvertently:

Press the button again.

LED turns off.

Recalling

The saved position is called up automatically.

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The operation is halted when you press a seat adjustment switch or one of the memory buttons.

Adjusting the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time during the journey.

Calling up has been disabled

After a short time, calling up saved seat positions is disabled to prevent the battery from being discharged.

To reactivate calling up:

- Open or close a door or the tailgate.
- Press a button on the remote control.
- Press the start/stop button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

General

Depending on the equipment, the mirror setting is saved for the currently used profile. When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, this position is called up automatically if the setting for this has been enabled.

Safety note

WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirrors are closer than they appear. The distance to road users behind the vehicle could be incorrectly estimated, for example when changing lane. Danger of accidents. Look over your shoulder to estimate the distance from following traffic.◀

Overview

1 Adjusting 69

2 Left/right, automatic parking function

3 Folding in and out 69

Selecting a mirror

Switching to other mirror:

Push switch.

Electrical adjustment

Press the button.

The mirror moves according to the button movement.

Saving positions

The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the seat and mirror memory.

Adjusting manually

In the event of an electrical defect, for example, press the borders of the mirror glass.

Automatic parking function

Principle

When reverse gear is engaged, mirror glass on front passenger side is titled downwards. This improves the view of the kerb or other obstacles near the ground, for example when parking.

Activating

1.  Push switch to driver's mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

When towing a trailer, the automatic parking function is switched off.

Deactivating

Push switch to front passenger's mirror position.

Folding in and out

NOTE

Due to the vehicle's width, it could sustain damage in car washes. Danger of damage to property. Fold in the mirrors manually or using the button prior to washing.◀

Press the button.

Possible up to approximately 20 km/h, approximately 15 mph.

Folding the mirrors in and out is advantageous in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- In narrow streets.
- When folding mirrors back out that have been folded in manually.

Folded-in mirrors automatically fold out at approximately 40 km/h, approximately 25 mph.

Automatic heating

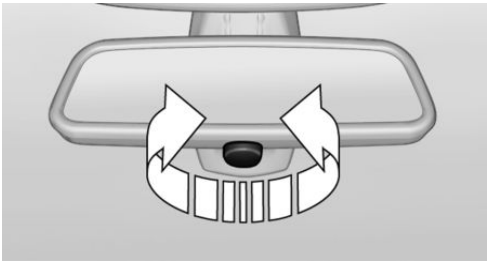
Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated with the engine running.

Automatically dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the rear-view mirror are used for control.

Rear-view mirror, manual-dim

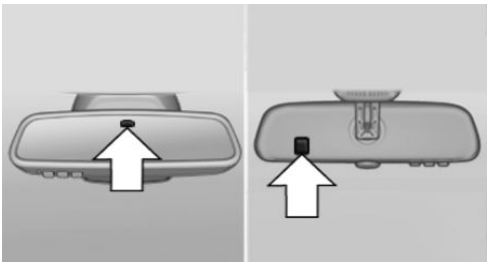
Turn button



To reduce glare by turning the button on the rear-view mirror.

Rear-view mirror, automatic-dim

Overview



The function is controlled by photocells:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the back of the mirror.

Functional requirements

- Keep photocells clean.
- Do not obstruct the zone between the rear-view mirror and windscreen.

Steering wheel

Safety note

WARNING

Steering wheel adjustment during the journey can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. You could lose control of the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Only adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is at a standstill.◄

Electric steering wheel lock

With manual gearbox: the steering wheel locks automatically when the driver's door is opened.

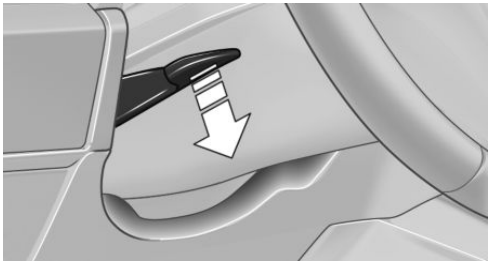
Switch on ignition to unlock.

WARNING

If steering wheel lock is activated, the vehicle cannot be steered. Danger of accidents. Switch on the ignition prior to moving the vehicle.◄

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Adjusting



1. Fold the lever downwards.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.
3. Swing the lever back up.

Steering wheel heating

Overview

 Steering wheel heating

Switching on/off

 Press the button.

▷ On: LED is illuminated.

▷ Off: LED turns off.

Carrying children in safety

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Important considerations

Safety note

WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- Pressing the start/stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engage selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

Risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◄

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Suitable seats

Information about which child seats can be used on the seats in question, if the child seats are attached with a seat belt — according to ECE-R 16 standard:

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF – a)	Rear seats, outer – b)	Rear seat, middle
0	Up to 10 kg	Up to 9 months	X	U	U	X
0+	Up to 13 kg	Up to 18 months	X	U	U	X
I	9 – 18 kg	Up to 4 years	X	U	U	X
II	15 – 25 kg	Up to 7 years	X	U	U	X

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF – a)	Rear seats, outer – b)	Rear seat, middle
III	22 – 36 kg	7 years or more	X	U	U	X

U: suitable for child restraint systems in Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight group.

X: not suitable for child restraint systems in Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight group.

a) Adapt the front/back position of the front passenger seat and, if necessary, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible routing of the belt.

b) When using child seats on the rear seats, adapt the front/back position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat, or remove it.

Always carry children at the rear

General

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children younger than 12 years old or less than 150 cm, 5 ft in height are only allowed to be transported in the rear using child restraint systems appropriate for their age, weight and stature. Children older than 12 years must be secured with a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system is no longer appropriate due to their age, weight and stature.

Safety note

WARNING

Children less than 150 cm, 5 ft in height cannot put on the seat belt correctly without using additional restraint systems. The protective effect of the seat belts can be restricted or they can be rendered ineffective if put on incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident or braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury or life. Children less than 150 cm, 5 ft in height must be secured in suitable restraint systems.◀

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Children on the front passenger's seat

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the passenger's side are deactivated. Front passenger airbags can only be deactivated with the key switch for front passenger airbags, see page 120.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are triggered. Danger of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.◀

WARNING

If the seat adjustment or child seat installation is incorrect, the stability of the child restraint system will be restricted or rendered ineffective. Danger of injury or life. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly positioned against the backrest. In all relevant backrests, adapt the backrest angle if possible and set the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged. If possi-

ble, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.◄

Fitting child restraints

General

When selecting, installing and using child restraint systems, comply with the information provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

Child restraints

Appropriate child restraint systems for every age and weight class are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety instructions

WARNING

If child restraint systems and their attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, their protective function may be restricted or rendered ineffective. A child might not be adequately restrained, for example, in the event of an accident or braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury or life. If child restraint systems and their attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, have them checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop and renewed if necessary.◄

WARNING

If the seat adjustment or child seat installation is incorrect, the stability of the child restraint system will be restricted or rendered ineffective. Danger of injury or life. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly positioned against the backrest. In all relevant backrests, adapt the backrest angle if possible and set the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.◄

For Australia/New Zealand: installation of child restraints

Please note the following warning because your vehicle has been equipped with a front airbag for the front passenger's seat that cannot be deactivated:

It is recommended not to use any kind of child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.

Extreme hazard

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.◄

Not for Australia/New Zealand: On the front passenger's seat

Deactivating airbags

WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are triggered. Danger of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.◄

Before fitting a child restraint in the front passenger's seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the passenger's side are disabled.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags with key switch, see page 120.

Rear-facing child restraints

DANGER

Active front passenger airbags can fatally injure a child in a rearward-facing child restraint system if they are triggered. Danger of injury or life. Make sure that the front passen-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

ger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.◄

Follow the information on the front passenger sun visor.

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Seat position and height

Before mounting a universal child restraint system, bring the front passenger's seat to the rearmost position and, if possible, to the highest position to achieve the best possible routing of the belt and protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located ahead of the child seat's belt guide, carefully move the front passenger's seat forwards until the best possible belt guidance is achieve.

Backrest width

With adjustable backrest width: before fitting a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat, fully open the backrest width. Do not change the backrest width from this point on and do not call up a memory position.

ISOFIX child seat mountings

General

Note for Australia: ISOFIX child seats are not permitted for road use in Australia at the time of printing of this handbook. However, also since a change of the respective regulations is expected in the future, lower ISOFIX anchorages are supplied in line with applicable ADRs also for Australia.

Comply with the operating and safety instructions from the manufacturer of the child restraint system when attaching and using ISOFIX child restraint systems.

Suitable ISOFIX child restraint systems

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Class/category – a)	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF	Rear seats, outer	Rear seat, middle
Carrycot			F - ISO/L1	X	X	X	X
			G - ISO/L2	X	X	X	X
0	Up to 10 kg	Approximately 9 months	E - ISO/R1	X	X	IL	X

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Class/category – a)	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF	Rear seats, outer	Rear seat, middle
0+	Up to 13 kg	Approximately 18 months	E - ISO/R1	X	X	IL	X
			D - ISO/R2	X	X	IL	X
			C - ISO/R3	X	X	IL	X
I	9 - 18 kg	Up to approximately 4 years	D - ISO/R2	X	X	IL	X
			C - ISO/R3	X	X	IL	X
			B - ISO/F2	X	X	IL, IUF	X
			B1 - ISO/F2X	X	X	IL, IUF	X
			A - ISO/F3	X	X	IL, IUF	X

a) When using child seats on the rear seats, adapt the front/back position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat, or remove it.

IL: the seat is suitable for installation of an ISOFIX child restraint system in the Semi-Universal category subject to compliance with the list of vehicles accompanying the child seat.

IUF: suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight class.

X: the seat is not approved or equipped with mounting points for the ISOFIX system.

Brackets for lower ISOFIX anchors

Safety note

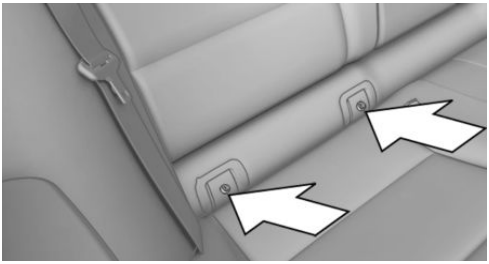
WARNING

If the ISOFIX child restraint systems are not engaged correctly, the protective effect of the ISOFIX child restraint systems may be restricted. Danger of injury or life. Make sure the lower anchor point has engaged correctly and the ISOFIX child restraint system is firmly positioned against the backrest.◂

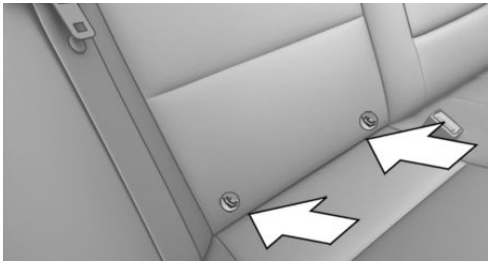
Position

The corresponding symbol shows the brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors.

The following variants may be fitted, depending on equipment:



The brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors are located behind the marked covers.



The brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors are located in the gap between the seat and backrest.

Before fitting ISOFIX child restraints

Pull the seat belt out of the area of the child seat mountings.

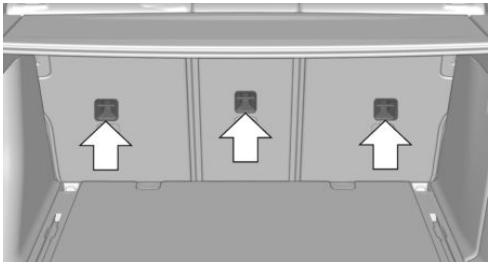
Fitting of ISOFIX child restraint systems

1. Install the child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Make sure that both ISOFIX anchors have snapped into place.

Upper ISOFIX retaining strap

Mounting points

The symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.



There are three mounting points for the upper retaining strap of ISOFIX child restraints.

Safety note

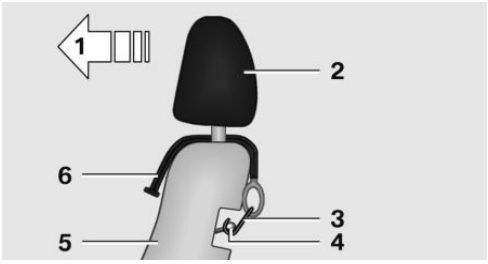
NOTE

The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only intended for these retaining straps. The mounting points can be damaged if other objects are attached. Danger of damage to property. Only attach child restraint systems to the upper retaining straps.◂

Guiding the retaining strap

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly with the child restraint system, the protective effect may be reduced. Danger of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed to the upper attachment strap over sharp edges, and that it is not twisted.◂



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
4 Mounting point
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise head restraint if necessary.
2. Guide the upper seat belt on the brackets of the head restraint.
3. Guide the holding belt between the backrest and luggage cover.

4. Engage the hook of the retaining strap in the mounting point.
5. Pull the restraining strap firmly down.
6. Push head restraint down if necessary and engage.

For Australia/New Zealand: Child restraints

General

In accordance with ADR 34/01, provisions have been made to allow installation of a child restraint at each rear seating position.

The anchoring hooks which belong to the upper restraining strap of the child restraint - AS 1754, can be applied immediately to the relevant mounting.

Please refer strictly to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint system.

Each seating position is fitted with a head rest.

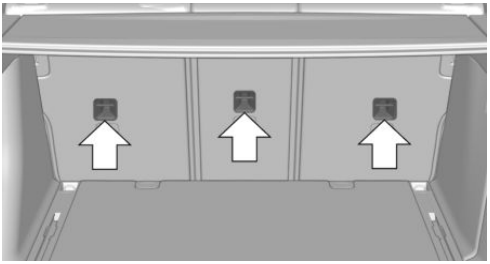
Safety instructions

WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle. After using the child restraints, the anchor fittings may need to be folded down.◄

Mounting points

The symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.

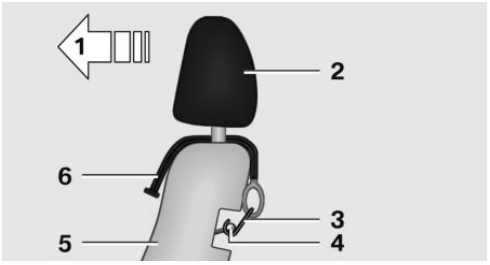


There are three mounting points for child restraint systems with an upper retaining strap.

Guiding the retaining strap

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly with the child restraint system, the protective effect may be reduced. Danger of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed to the upper attachment strap over sharp edges, and that it is not twisted.◄



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
4 Mounting point
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

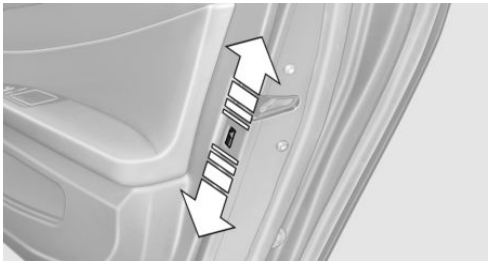
1. Raise head restraint if necessary.
2. Guide the upper seat belt on the brackets of the head restraint.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

3. Guide the holding belt between the backrest and luggage cover.
4. Engage the hook of the retaining strap in the mounting point.
5. Pull the restraining strap firmly down.
6. Push head restraint down if necessary and engage.

Securing doors and windows in the rear

Rear doors



Push down the locking levers on the rear doors.

The door in question can now only be opened from the outside.

Safety switch for the rear

Press the button on the driver's door.

When the safety function is switched on, the LED is illuminated.

Various functions are blocked and cannot be operated in the rear.

Driving

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Start/stop button

Principle

The ignition is switched on or off and the engine is started by pressing the start/stop button.

Steptronic transmission: The engine starts when the brake pedal is depressed and the start/stop button is pressed.

Manual gearbox: the engine starts if the clutch pedal is pressed when pressing the start/stop button.

Ignition on

Steptronic transmission: Press the start/stop button again without depressing the brake pedal.

Manual gearbox: press the start/stop button, do not press the clutch pedal.

All systems are operational.

Most of the indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster are illuminated for different lengths of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems.

Ignition off

Steptronic transmission: press the start/stop button again without depressing the brake pedal.

Manual gearbox: press the start/stop button again, do not press the clutch pedal.

All indicator lamps in the instrument cluster extinguish.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems.

Safety measures

When the ignition is switched off, selector lever position P will be automatically engaged, if selector lever position D or R is engaged.

With the vehicle stationary and the engine shut down, the ignition is switched off automatically under the following circumstances:

- When locking, even with the low-beam headlights switched on.
- Shortly before the battery is discharged so that an engine start remains possible.
- When opening or closing the driver's door, if the driver's belt is unfastened and the low-beam headlights are switched off.
- When the driver's belt is unfastened, if the driver's door is opened and the low-beam headlights switched off.

After about 15 minutes without further operation, low-beam headlights are changed over to side lights.

Radio ready state

Activate radio ready state: when the engine is running, press the start/stop button.

Individual electrical systems remain operational.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

The radio ready sate is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- After approximately eight minutes.
- When locking via the central locking system.
- Shortly before the battery is discharged so that an engine start remains possible.

Radio readiness remains active when ignition is switched off automatically, such as for following reasons:

- Opening or closing driver's door.
- Unfastening driver's seat belt.
- When low-beam headlights are automatically changed to side lights.

If engine is switched off and ignition is switched on, radio ready state will be automatically activated when door is opened if light is switched off or daytime driving lights are switched on, when corresponding equipment is fitted.

Engine start

Safety instructions

DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless, but highly toxic. In enclosed spaces, the exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. Danger of fatal injury. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.◄

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◄

NOTE

Repeated start attempts or starting several times in quick succession means that fuel is not combusted, or insufficiently so. The catalytic converter can overheat. Danger of damage to property. Avoid starting more than once in quick succession.◄

Diesel engine

With the engine cold and at temperatures below 0 °C, approximately 32 °F the starting operation can be delayed slightly due to automatic preheating.

A Check Control message is shown.

Steptronic transmission

Starting the engine

1. Press the brake.
2. Press the start/stop button.

Starting proceeds for a certain time automatically and stops as soon as the engine is started.

Manual gearbox

Starting the engine

1. Press the brake.
2. Depress the clutch and engage idle position.
3. Press the start/stop button.

Starting proceeds for a certain time automatically and stops as soon as the engine is started.

Stopping the engine

Safety instructions

WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- Pressing the start/stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engage selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

Risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◄

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◄

Before entering the car wash

So that the vehicle can roll into the vehicle wash, follow the information on washing in automatic vehicle washes, see page 259.

Steptronic transmission

Stopping the engine

1. With vehicle at a standstill, engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio ready state is switched on.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Manual gearbox

Stopping the engine

1. Press the Start/Stop button when the vehicle is at standstill.
2. Engage first gear or reverse.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Auto Start Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start Stop function helps you to save fuel. by stopping the engine when stationary, for example, in a traffic jam or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. For driving off, the engine starts automatically.

General

After each time the engine is started using the start/stop button, the Auto Start Stop function is ready to operate.

The function is activated from approximately 5 km/h, approximately 3 mph.

Depending on selected drive mode, the system is activated or deactivated automatically.

Stopping the engine

The engine is automatically shut down when stationary under the following conditions:

Steptronic transmission:

- Selector lever in selector lever position D.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

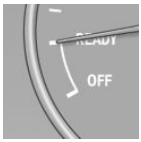
- Brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is at a standstill.
- Driver's seat belt buckled or driver's door closed.

Manual gearbox:

- Transmission in neutral and clutch pedal not pressed.
- Driver's seat belt buckled or driver's door closed.

The air flow rate of the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is not running.

Displays in the instrument cluster



The display READY in the revolution counter indicates that the Auto Start Stop function is ready for automatic engine starting.

The display indicates that the preconditions for an automatic engine stop are not met.

Restrictions of the function

The engine is not shut down automatically in the following situations:

- Outside temperature too low.
- High outside temperature and operation of the automatic air conditioning.
- Interior not heated or cooled to the desired temperature.
- Engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- Sharp steering angle or steering operation.
- After reversing.
- Condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- At high altitudes.
- Bonnet is unlocked.
- Parking assistant is activated.
- Stop-and-go traffic.
- Selector lever position in N, M/S or R.
- Use of fuel with high ethanol content.

Engine start

For driving off, the engine automatically starts under the following conditions:

- Steptronic transmission: by releasing the brake pedal.
- Manual gearbox: Depress the clutch pedal.

After starting the engine, accelerate as normal.

Safety function

After an automatic shut down, the engine will not restart automatically if one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- Driver's seat belt unbuckled and driver's door open.
- Bonnet has been unlocked.

Several indicator lamps illuminate for various lengths of time.

The engine can only be started using the start/stop button.

Restrictions of the function

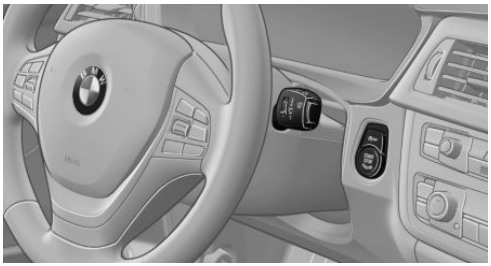
Even if you do not want to drive off, the engine restarts automatically in the following situations:

- Very high temperature in the interior, if the cooling function is switched on.
- The driver applies lock to the steering wheel.
- Steptronic transmission: shift from selector lever position D to N, R or M/S.
- Steptronic transmission: shift from selector lever position P to N, D, R or M/S.
- Vehicle starts to roll.
- Condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.

- Very low temperature in the interior, if the heating is switched on.
- Low brake vacuum, for example because the brake pedal has been depressed a number of times in succession.

Manually deactivating/activating the system

Using the button



Press the button.

- LED illuminates: Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.

  During an automatic engine stop, the engine is started.

  The engine can be started or stopped only by means of the start/stop button.
- LED goes out: Auto Start Stop function is activated.

Parking the vehicle during automatic engine stop

With automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example in order to leave it.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Press the start/stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.

   Selector lever position P is automatically engaged.
2. Apply the parking brake.

Manual gearbox:

1. Press the start/stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.
2. Engage first gear or reverse.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Start engine as usual, using the start/stop button.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations the Auto Start Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety's sake, for example if the absence of the driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start Stop function no longer shuts down the engine automatically. A Check Control message is shown. It is possible to keep driving. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Parking brake

Safety note

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◀

Applying

The lever engages itself after pulling up.

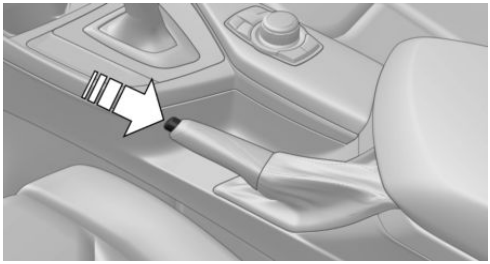
The indicator light illuminates red. The parking brake is engaged.

If it must be used while driving by way of exception, slightly engage the parking brake while pressing and holding the button.

To avoid corrosion and one-sided braking effect, slightly pull on the parking brake from time to time when moving away, if traffic conditions allow.

The brake lights do not illuminate when the parking brake is applied.

Releasing



Pull up the lever a bit, press the button and guide the lever down.

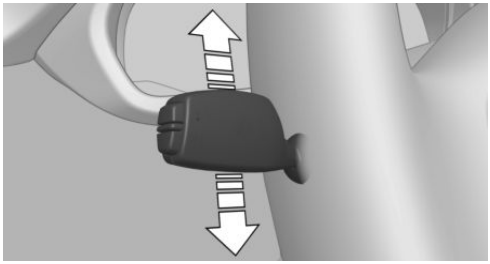
Turn indicators, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Turn indicator

Turn indicator in exterior mirror

Do not fold in the exterior mirrors while driving or while operating the turn indicators or hazard warning lights to ensure that the turn indicators in the exterior mirrors are well recognisable.

Indicating



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

The lever returns to its initial position after activation.

To cancel the signal manually, press the lever softly as far as the resistance point.

Triple turn signal

Briefly press lever up or down.

The turn indicator flashes three times.

This function can be enabled or disabled.

On the Control Display:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "One-touch turn signal"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

Indicating a turn briefly

Press the lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

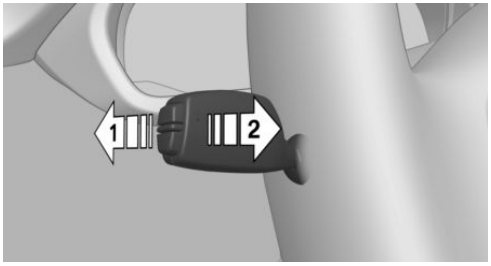
Malfunction

If the indicator light flashes more rapidly than usual, a turn signal light has failed.

During trailer towing, the light might also indicate failure of one of the turn signal lights of the trailer.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Pull the lever forwards or backwards.



- ▷ High-beam headlights, arrow 1.
- ▷ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General

Do not use wipers with a dry windscreen, otherwise the wiper blades will wear or become damaged more quickly.

Safety notes

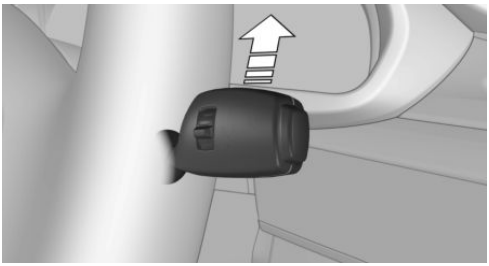
WARNING

If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, this can trap body parts or damage parts of the vehicle. Danger of injury or damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.◄

NOTE

If the wipers have frozen on, switching on can cause the wiper blades to tear and the wiper motor to overheat. Danger of damage to property. Defrost the windscreen before switching on the wipers.◄

Switching on



Tip the lever up or push it beyond the resistance point.

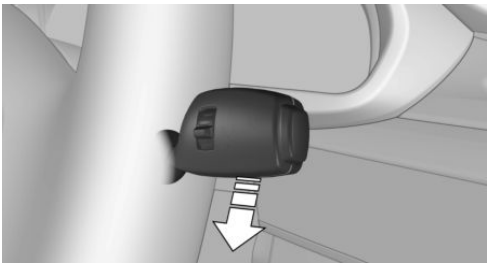
- ▷ Normal wiping speed: press upwards once.

  When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to intermittent operation.
- ▷ Rapid wiping speed: press upwards twice or press once beyond the resistance point.

  When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to normal speed.

The lever returns to the basic position when released.

Switching off and flick-wiping



Press the lever down.

- ▷ Switching off fast wiping speed: press downwards twice.
- ▷ Switching off normal wiping speed: press downwards once.
- ▷ Flick-wiping: press downwards once.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

The lever returns to the basic position when released.

Intermittent mode or rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the rain intensity.

General

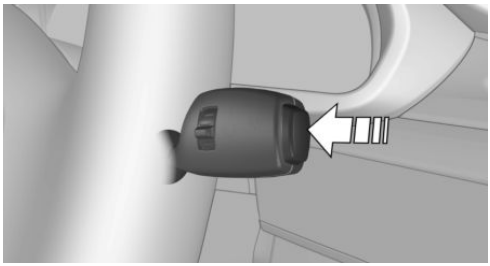
The sensor is mounted on the windscreen, directly in front of the rear-view mirror. Without rain sensor, the interval for the wiper operation is specified.

Safety note

NOTE

In car washes, the wipers may inadvertently start moving if the rain sensor is activated. Danger of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.◀

Activating/deactivating



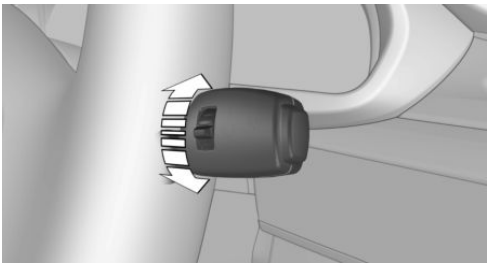
Press the button on the wiper lever.

Wiping is started.

If a rain sensor is fitted: LED in wiper lever illuminates.

If there is frost, no wiping process is started.

Setting the interval time or sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the knurled wheel to set the interval time or sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Windscreen and headlight washer

Safety instructions

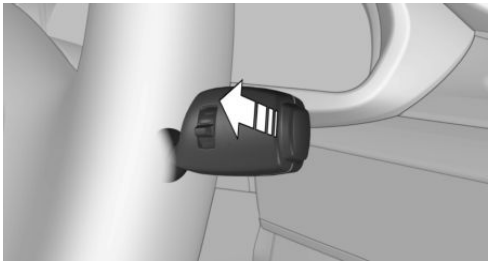
WARNING

At low temperatures, the washer fluid can freeze onto the windscreen and restrict visibility. Danger of accidents. Only use the washer systems if there is no possibility of the washer fluid freezing. Use anti-freeze if required.◀

NOTE

If the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot operate as intended. Danger of damage to property. Do not use the washer system with the washer fluid reservoir empty.◀

Cleaning



Pull the lever.

Fluid from the washer fluid reservoir is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wipers are operated briefly.

When the vehicle's lights are switched on, the headlights are also cleaned simultaneously at practical intervals.

Windscreen washer jets

Windscreen washer jets are automatically heated when the ignition is switched on.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded away from the windscreen.

General

This is important, for example for replacing the wiper blades or folding them out in the event of frost.

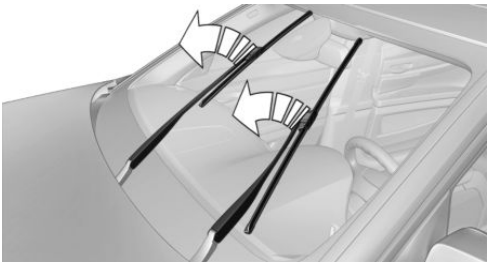
Safety note

WARNING

If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, this can trap body parts or damage parts of the vehicle. Danger of injury or damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.◄

Folding out wipers

1. Switch ignition on and back off again.
2. If there is a risk of frost, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen.
3. Press the wiper lever upwards beyond the resistance point and hold it there for approximately three seconds until the wipers come to a standstill in a nearly vertical position.
4. Lift wipers completely away from the windscreen.



Folding in wipers

After folding the wipers in, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press the wiper lever downwards. The wipers move back to the rest position and are operational once again.

Washer fluid

General

All washer jets are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and screenwash concentrate for the windscreen washer, if necessary with the addition of anti-freeze.

Recommended minimum fill level: 1 litre, approximately 1.7 Imp. pints.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Some anti-freezes can contain toxic substances, and are flammable. Risk of fire and fatal injury. Comply with the notes on the containers. Keep anti-freezes away from sources of combustion. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.◄

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite on contact with hot parts of the engine, and catch fire. Danger of injury or damage to property. Only top up washer fluid when the engine has cooled down. Then fully close the cap of the washer fluid reservoir.◄

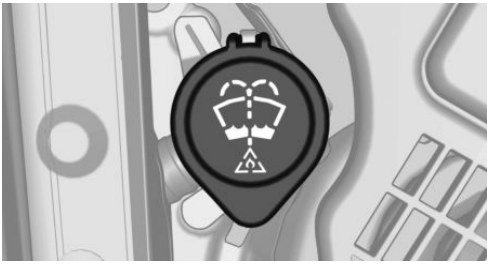
NOTE

Additives containing silicone added to the washer fluid for their water beading effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washer system. Danger of damage to property. Do not add any additives containing silicone to the washer fluid.◄

NOTE

Mixing different screenwash concentrates or anti-freezes can result in damage to the washer system. Danger of damage to property. Do not mix different screenwash concentrates or anti-freezes. Comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.◄

Overview



The reservoir for the washer fluid is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

Using undiluted screenwash concentrate or anti-freeze made of alcohol can lead to incorrect indications at low temperatures below -15 °C/+5 °F.

Manual gearbox

Safety instructions

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◄

NOTE

When shifting into a lower gear, high engine speeds can damage the engine. Danger of damage to property. Push the shift lever to the right while shifting into the 5th or 6th gear.◄

Shifting gears

General

For a harmonious and dynamic gear change, the engine speed is automatically adjusted during a gearshift.

Reverse gear

Engage this position only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance of the selector lever move in a dynamic movement towards the left and engage the reverse gear with a gearshift movement forwards.

Steptronic transmission

Safety note

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◄

Selector lever positions

D Drive

Selector lever position for all normal driving. All gears for forward driving are selected automatically.

R Reverse

Engage this position only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral, idling

In selector lever position N, the vehicle can roll, for example in car washes.

P Park

Engage this position only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive gears are locked.

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged in the following situations:

- After stopping the engine in the radio ready state, see page 80, or ignition off, see page 80, when selector lever position R or D is engaged.
- If the vehicle is at a standstill and selector lever position D or R is engaged, the driver's belt is unfastened, the driver's door is opened and the brake is not depressed.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables you to achieve maximum performance. Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the regular full-throttle position; resistance will be felt.

Engaging selector lever positions

General

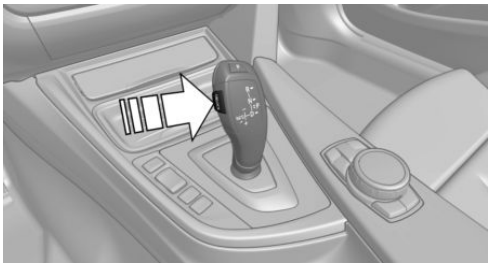
Apply the brake until you are ready to drive off; this will prevent the vehicle from moving when a gear is selected.

- It is only possible to move from selector lever position P with the engine running and the brake pressed.
- Before shifting from selector lever position P or N when the vehicle is stationary, first press the brake, otherwise the shift lock will not be deactivated and the desired gearshift will not be performed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

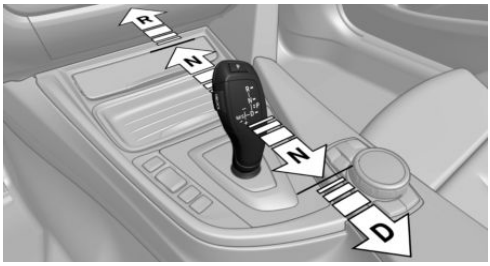
Selector lever lock

A lock prevents inadvertently shifting to selector lever position R and inadvertently shifting from selector lever position P.



Revoke lock: press the button, arrow.

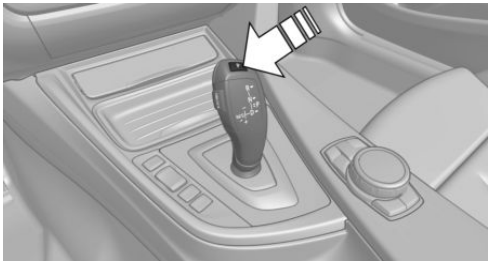
Engaging selector lever positions D, N, R



With the driver's seat belt fastened, briefly press the selector lever in the desired direction, possibly overcoming a resistance point.

When you let go of the selector lever, it returns to the central position.

Engaging selector lever in position P



Press button P, arrow.

Sport program and manual operation

Activating the sport program

Press the selector lever out of selector lever position D to the left.

The sport program of the gearbox is activated.

Activating M/S manual operation

1. Press the selector lever out of selector lever position D to the left.
2. Press the selector lever forwards or pull it backwards.

Manual operation M/S becomes active and the gear is shifted.

The gear selected appears briefly on the instrument cluster, for example M1.

If required by the situation, the Steptronic transmission continues shifting automatically.

Example: if certain engine speed limits are reached, it is automatically upshifted as needed in manual operation M/S.

Switching to manual operation

- To shift down: press the selector lever forwards.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever backwards.

Gear changes are only done with the suitable engine and travel speed, for example, there is no change down with too high an engine speed.

The gear selected appears briefly on the instrument cluster, followed by the gear actually in use.

Steptronic sport transmission: avoid automatic shift up in manual operation M/S

The Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically switch up in manual operation M/S when certain engine speed limits are reached, if one of the following conditions is met:

- DSC deactivated.
- TRACTION activated.
- SPORT+ activated.

Beyond that, it is not shifted down in the case of kick-down.

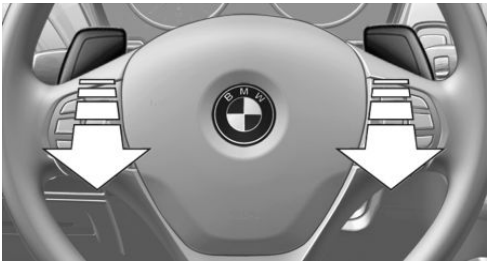
In the corresponding gearbox version, operating the kick-down and the left shift paddle at the same time allows you to change down to the lowest possible gear. This is not possible in a brief change from selector lever position D to manual operation M/S using the shift paddles.

Switching off the sport program/ manual operation

Press the selector lever to the right.

D is shown in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles



Shift paddles on steering wheel enable fast gearshifting without taking hands off steering wheel.

- Change up: pull right shift paddle briefly.
- Change down: pull left shift paddle briefly.
- In the corresponding gearbox version, pulling the left shift paddle for a long time allows you to change down to the lowest possible gear.

Gear changes are only done with the suitable engine and travel speed, for example, there is no change down with too high an engine speed.

The gear selected appears briefly on the instrument cluster, followed by the gear currently in use.

If you shift gear with the shift paddles on steering wheel whilst in automatic mode, the vehicle switches to manual operation briefly in selector lever position D and permanently in selector lever position S.

In selector lever position D, the system reverts to automatic operation from manual operation after a certain period of time of moderate driving, without acceleration or gearshifts using shift paddles.

In some transmission versions, changing to automatic operation is possible if selector lever remains in selector lever position D:

- Give right shift paddle a long pull.

  Or

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

▷ In addition to briefly pulling right shift paddle, briefly pull left shift paddle.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example: P.

Unlocking transmission lockout electronically

General

Unlocking transmission lockout electronically to manoeuvre the vehicle out of a danger area.

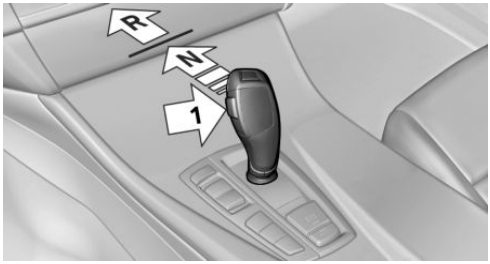
Unlocking is possible if the starter can turn the engine.

Before transmission lockout is released, apply parking brake to prevent vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Apply the brakes and keep them applied.
2. Press the start/stop button. The starter must be heard to start turning.
3. Press the button on the selector lever, see arrow 1, push the selector lever to selector lever position N and hold it there, see arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   A corresponding Check Control message is displayed.



4. Release the selector lever.
5. Release the brake as soon as the starter stops.
6. Manoeuvre the vehicle out of the danger area and then secure it against rolling away.

For more information, see the Tow-starting and towing chapter.

Steptronic sport transmission: Launch Control

Principle

Launch Control allows optimised acceleration when driving off on a non-slip road surface.

General

Using Launch Control leads to preliminary component wear, as this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control when running in, see page 192.

To support the driving stability, re-activate DSC as soon as possible.

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

Requirements

Launch Control is available with an engine at operating temperature, so after an uninterrupted drive of at least 10 km, approximately 6 miles.

To start with Launch Control, do not engage the steering wheel.

Starting with Launch Control

With the engine running:

1. 

Press button or select Sport+ with drive experience switch.

   TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.
2. Engage selector lever position S.

3. Depress the brake forcefully with your foot.
4. Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance at the full-throttle position and hold, kick-down.

   A flag symbol is shown in the instrument cluster.
5. The engine speed when driving off is regulated. Release the brake within 3 seconds.

Before using Launch Control again, allow the transmission to cool down for about 5 minutes.

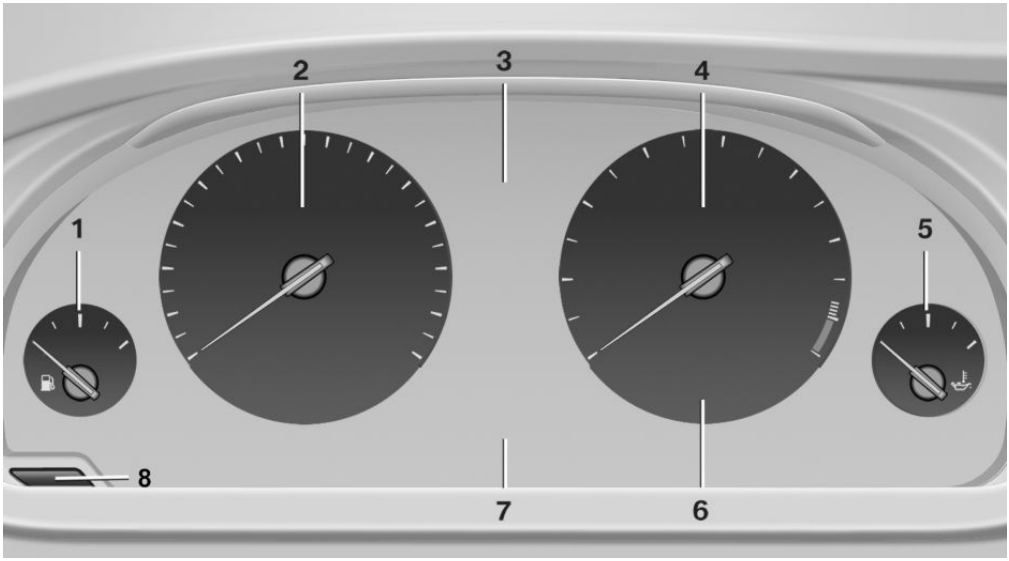
When used again, Launch Control sets itself to the ambient conditions, for example wet carriageway.

Displays

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Overview, Instrument cluster



1 Fuel gauge 100
2 Speedometer
3 Messages, for example, Check Control
4 Revolution counter 100
5 Engine oil temperature 100
6 Current fuel consumption
7 Electronic displays
8 Reset kilometres 100

Check Control

Principle

The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any faults in the monitored systems.

General

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and the Head-Up Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

If applicable, the text message shown in the Control Display is accompanied by an additional acoustic sound.

Indicator and warning lamps

General

Indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colours.

When the engine starts or the ignition is switched on, the functionality of some lights is briefly checked.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder

Seat belt is not fastened on the driver's side. For some country versions: front passenger's seat belt is not fastened or objects are detected on the front passenger seat.

Indicator lamp flashes or is illuminated: seat belt on the driver's or front passenger side is not fastened. The seat belt reminder can also be triggered if there are objects in the front passenger seat.

Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats

Red: seat belt not fastened on the corresponding rear seat.

Green: seat belt fastened on the corresponding rear seat.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner may be faulty.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Parking brake, brake system

For further information see release parking brake, see page 85.

Front-end collision warning

Indicator lamp is illuminated: forewarning, for example if a danger of collision is anticipated or there is a very short distance to a vehicle ahead.

Increase distance.

Indicator lamp flashes: acute warning in the event of an immediate collision if the vehicle approaches another vehicle with relatively high differential speed.

Engage by braking and swerving as required.

Person warning

Symbol in the instrument cluster.

If there is a risk of collision with a detected person, the symbol illuminates and a signal sounds.

Orange lights

Active Cruise Control

The number of transverse bars shows the selected distance to the vehicle in front.

For further information see Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function, ACC, see page 149.

Vehicle recognition, Active Cruise Control

Indicator lamp is illuminated: preceding vehicle detected.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Indicator lamp flashes: the requirements for operation of the system are no longer being met.

The system was deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or the accelerator pedal.

Yellow lights

Anti-lock Brake System, ABS

Braking force reinforcement may be faulty. Avoid sudden braking. Consider longer braking distance.

Immediately have a check performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

If the indicator lamp is flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilised. Decrease speed and adjust driving style to the road conditions.

Indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC has failed.

Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information see Dynamic Stability Control DSC, see page 143.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated, or Dynamic Traction Control DTC activated

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is deactivated or Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated.

For further information see Dynamic Stability Control DSC, see page 143, and Dynamic Traction Control DTC, see page 144.

Runflat indicator RPA

The runflat indicator reports a loss of tyre pressure in a tyre.

Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.

For more information, see Runflat indicator RPA, see page 124.

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM

The indicator lamp is illuminated.

The Tyre Pressure Monitor reports a low tyre inflation pressure or a flat tyre.

Note the information in the Check Control message.

Warning lamp flashes and is then illuminated continuously.

No flat tyres or loss of tyre pressure can be detected.

- Fault due to systems or devices with the same frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- TPM could not shut down the reset: execute a reset of the system again.
- Wheel without TPM electronics is fitted: have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if necessary.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For more information, see Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 121.

Steering system

Steering system faulty.

Have the steering system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or

another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Engine functions

Engine function malfunctioning.

Have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information see socket for on-board diagnosis, see page 242.

Lane departure warning

System is switched on and warns you under certain conditions if you leave a detected lane without indicating first.

For further information see Lane Departure Warning, see page 135.

Rear fog lights

Rear fog lights are switched on.

For further information see rear fog lights, see page 115.

Green lights

Turn indicator

Turn indicator is switched on.

If the indicator lamp flashes more rapidly than usual, a turn signal light has failed.

For further information see turn indicator, see page 85.

Side lights, driving lights

Side lights or driving lights are switched on.

For further information see side lights/low-beam headlights, driving lights control, see page 111.

Front fog lights

Front fog lights are switched on.

For further information see front fog lights, see page 115.

High-beam assistance

High-beam assistance is switched on.

High-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

For further information see high-beam assistance, see page 114.

Cruise Control

The system is switched on. The speed set using the control functions on the steering wheel is maintained.

Manual speed limiter

Indicator lamp is illuminated: system is switched on.

Indicator lamp flashes: set speed limit is exceeded. An acoustic signal may sound.

Reduce speed or deactivate system.

Blue lights

High-beam headlights

High-beam headlights are switched on.

For further information see high-beam headlights, see page 86.

General lights

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or saved.

Text messages

Text messages and symbols in the instrument cluster explain the meaning of a check control message and the indicator and warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

You can call up additional information, for example the cause of the fault and any action required, via Check Control.

The supplementary text is automatically shown in the Control Display for urgent messages.

Functions

Depending on the Check Control message, the following functions can be selected.

- "Owner's Handbook"

  Display additional information on the Check Control message in the integrated Owner's Handbook.

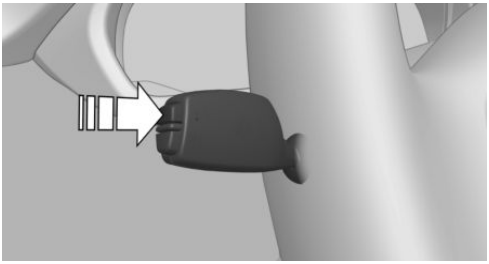
- "Service request"

  Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

- "BMW Mobile Care"

  Contact breakdown assistance.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on turn indicator lever.

- Some Check Control messages are displayed permanently and remain until the fault has been repaired. If there are a number of malfunctions simultaneously, the messages are displayed in succession.

  These messages can be hidden for approximately eight seconds. They are then displayed again automatically.

- Other Check Control messages are automatically hidden after approximately 20 seconds. They remain saved and can be displayed again.

Displaying Check Control messages saved in memory

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control"
4. Select a text message.

Messages displayed at the end of a journey

Certain messages displayed when driving are displayed again when the ignition is switched off.

Fuel gauge

The vehicle inclination can lead to fluctuations in the display.

Depending on the equipment, the arrow next to the petrol pump symbol shows on which side of the vehicle the petrol tank flap is.

Information on refuelling, see page 214.

Revolution counter

It is vital to avoid engine speeds in the red warning zone. In this zone, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Engine oil temperature

- Cold engine: the pointer is located at a low temperature value. Drive with moderate engine speed and vehicle speed.
- Normal operating temperature: the needle is located in the centre or left half of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the pointer is located at a high temperature value. A Check Control message is also displayed.

Coolant temperature

If the coolant and therefore the engine become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed.

Check coolant level.

Odometer and trip distance recorder

Display

- Odometer, arrow 1.
- Trip distance recorder, arrow 2.

Show/reset distance

Press the button.

- When the ignition is off, the time, outside temperature and odometer are displayed.
- When the ignition is on, the trip distance recorder is reset.

Outside temperature

WARNING

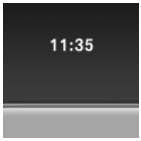
Even at temperatures above +3 °C/+37 °F, there can be an increased danger of icy roads, for example on bridges or on shaded roads. Danger of accidents. At low temperatures, adjust the driving style to the weather conditions.◄

If the display drops to +3 °C/+37 °F or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is shown.

There is an increased risk of black ice.

Time



The time is shown at the bottom of the instrument cluster.

The time can be set on the Control Display.

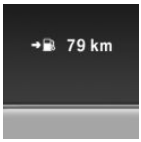
Date

The date is displayed on the on-board computer.

The date and date format can be set on the Control Display.

Range

Display



If there is a small remaining range:

- ▷ A Check Control message is briefly displayed.
- ▷ The on-board computer shows the remaining range.

▷ With dynamic driving style, for example fast cornering, the engine function is not always ensured.

If the range drops below approximately 50 km, approximately 30 miles the Check Control message is continually displayed.

NOTE

If the range drops below 50 km, approximately 30 miles the engine could not be supplied any more with sufficient fuel. Engine functions are no longer ensured. Danger of damage to property. Refuel in good time.◄

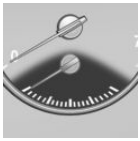
Displaying the range

The range can also be shown as a bar display in the instrument cluster.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Analogue additional displays"

Current fuel consumption

Instrument cluster



Shows the momentary fuel consumption. It is possible to check the economy and environmental compatibility of your driving style.

Instrument cluster with extended functionality

Shows the momentary fuel consumption. It is possible to check the economy and environmental compatibility of your driving style.

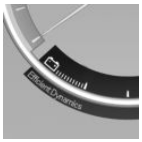
Displaying the current fuel consumption

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Analogue additional displays"

The bar gauge for the current fuel consumption is shown in the instrument cluster.

Energy recuperation

Display



In the Coasting mode, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electrical energy. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be lowered.

Service requirements

Principle

The function shows the necessary service requirements and the corresponding range of maintenance jobs.

General

The distance to be driven or time to the next maintenance is displayed briefly after switching on the ignition briefly in the instrument cluster.

The current service requirements can be read by a service advisor from the remote control.

Display

Detailed information on service requirements

More detailed information on the scope of maintenance can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service requirements"

   Essential maintenance routines and any statutory inspections required are displayed.
4. Select an entry to display more detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No servicing is currently needed.
	Maintenance or an inspection required by law is due soon.
	Servicing is overdue.

Entering deadlines

Enter deadlines for prescribed statutory inspections of the vehicle.

Ensure that the date and time of the vehicle are set correctly.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service requirements"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.
7. Confirm.

   The date input is saved.

Automatic Service notification

Data on the service status or on statutory inspections for the vehicle are transmitted to the Service partner automatically when a service or inspection is imminent.

It can be checked when the Service partner was notified.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Teleservice Call"

Service history

General

Have maintenance work performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. Performed maintenance work is recorded in the vehicle data, see page 241.

The maintenance visits entered can be shown on the Control Display. Operation is available as soon as a maintenance visit has been entered in the vehicle data.

Displaying service history

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service requirements"
4. "Service history"

   Maintenance visits carried out are shown.
5. Select an entry to display more detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	Green: maintenance has been carried out on time.
OK	Yellow: maintenance has been carried out with a delay.
!	Maintenance has not been carried out.

Shift point indicator

Principle

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General

The shift point indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and manual gearbox depending on equipment and country version.

Information on up or downshifting are displayed on the instrument cluster.

Manual gearbox: displays

Symbol	Description
	Most efficient gear is engaged.
3	Shift up into most efficient gear.
3	Shift down into most efficient gear.
N	Shift to neutral.

Steptronic transmission: displays

Example	Description
M3	Most efficient gear is engaged.
3▸4	Shift to a more efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info with overtaking restriction display

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently detected speed limit in the instrument cluster.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

General

The camera in the area of the interior rear-view mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with additional symbols, for example, when wet, are also compared with data internal to the vehicle, for example the rain sensor, and displayed, depending on the situation. The system considers the information saved in the navigation system and also displays the speed limits present on unmarked sections of road.

Speed limits for towing a trailer are not shown.

Overtaking restriction display

Principle

Overtaking restrictions and their cancellations detected by the camera are indicated by corresponding signs in the instrument cluster.

General

The system only considers no passing restrictions and lifting the restriction made known by signage.

Nothing will be displayed in the following situations:

- In countries in which no passing is primarily shown by road markings.
- On routes without signage.
- On railway crossings, lane markings or in other situations which would not indicate an unsigned no passing restriction.

No passing restrictions for towing a trailer are not shown.

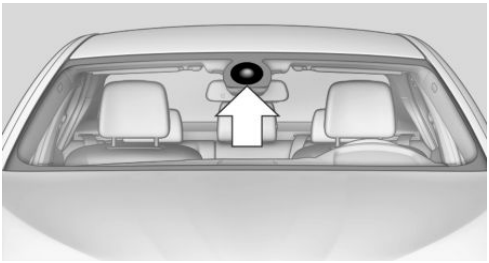
Safety note

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the visibility conditions and the traffic situation. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◄

Overview

Camera



The camera is in the area of the base of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear view mirror.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Speed Limit Info"

If Speed Limit Info is switched on, this can be shown via the on-board computer on the information display in the instrument cluster.

Overtaking restrictions are displayed together with switched-on Speed Limit Info.

Display

The following appears in the instrument cluster:

Speed Limit Info

Present speed limit.

Speed limit cancelled - for German motorways.

Speed Limit Info unavailable.

Speed Limit Info can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.

Overtaking restriction display

No passing restriction.

No passing restriction cancelled.

Overtaking restrictions can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.

System limits

The function may be disabled or inaccurate under certain conditions, for example:

- In thick fog and heavy rain or snow.
- If signs are fully or partially obscured by objects, stickers or paint.
- If the vehicle is moving too close to the vehicle ahead.
- In the case of bright oncoming light or powerful reflections.
- When the windscreen in front of the rearview mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, etc.
- Due to possible wrong detections of the camera.
- If the speed limits saved in the navigation system are wrong.
- In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- If there are deviations in relation to the navigation, for example due to changes in the road routing.
- On overtaking buses or trucks with speed stickers.
- If traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- During the calibration process of the camera immediately after the vehicle is supplied.
- If signs are detected that apply to a parallel road.

Selection lists in the instrument cluster

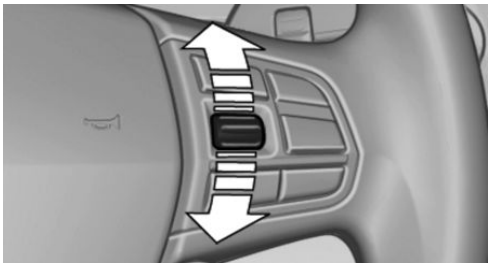
General

Depending on equipment, the following can be displayed or operated via the buttons and the knurled wheel on the steering wheel, using the displays in the instrument cluster and Head-Up Display:

- Current audio source.
- Redialing for telephone.
- Activating the voice control system.

In addition, programs of the drive experience switch are shown.

Activating the list and entering a setting



Turn the knurled wheel on the right-hand side of the steering wheel to activate the corresponding list.

1. Turn the knurled wheel and select the required setting.
2. Press the knurled wheel.

Display

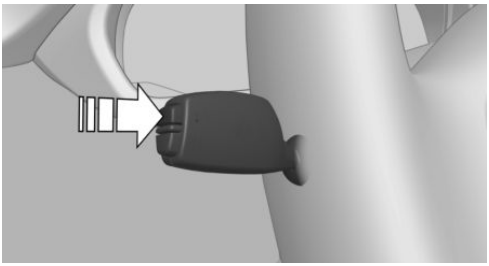
Depending on equipment, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from what is displayed.

On-board computer

Display in the information display

The information from the on-board computer is displayed in the information display in the instrument cluster.

Calling up information on the information display



Press the button on turn indicator lever.

Information is displayed on the information display in the instrument cluster.

Overview of the information

Repeated pressing of the button on the turn indicator lever shows the following information on the information display:

- Range.
- Average consumption, fuel.
- Momentary consumption, fuel.
- Average speed.
- Date.
- Speed Limit Info.
- Time of arrival.

  With activated route guidance in the navigation system.
- Distance to destination.

  With activated route guidance in the navigation system.
- ECO PRO bonus range.

Selecting information

It can be set which information of the on-board computer can be called up on the information display in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. Select required information.

Detailed information

Range

Displays the estimated range available with the remaining fuel.

It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 30 km, approximately 20 miles.

If the fuel provides a range of less than 80 km, 45 miles, the colour of the display changes.

Average fuel consumption

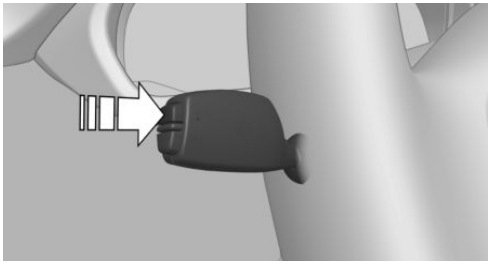
The average consumption is calculated for the period during which the engine is running.

The average consumption is calculated on the route travelled since the on-board computer was last reset.

Average speed

The calculation of average speed ignores any stationary periods where the engine was switched off manually.

Resetting average values



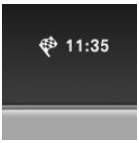
Keep the button pressed on the turn indicator lever.

Distance to destination

The remaining distance to the destination is displayed if a destination was entered in the navigation system before the start of the journey.

The distance to the destination is automatically adopted.

Arrival time



The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination was entered in the navigation system before the start of the journey.

A precondition is that the time is correctly set.

Speed Limit Info

For more information, see the Speed Limit Info chapter.

Journey computer

General

Two kinds of on-board computer are available on the Control Display:

- "On-board computer": values can be reset any number of times.
- "Trip computer": values deliver an overview of the current journey.

Call up on-board computer or journey computer

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "On-board computer" or "Trip computer"

Resetting the Journey computer

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip computer"
4. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.

- "Reset": all values are reset.
- "Automatic reset": all values are reset if the vehicle is at a standstill for approximately 4 hours.

Resetting fuel consumption or speed

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "On-board computer"
4. "Consumption" or "Speed"
5. "OK"

Sport displays

Principle

On the Control Display the current values for power and torque are shown with the relevant equipment.

Showing sport displays

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Sport displays"

Speed warning

Principle

A speed limit can be set which triggers a warning when it is reached.

General

Repeat warning if the set speed limit was undershot once by at least 5 km/h/3 mph.

Displaying, setting or altering the speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Warning at:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
6. Press the Controller.

Speed warning is saved.

Activating/deactivating speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Speed warning"
5. Press the Controller.

Saving actual speed as speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Select current speed"
5. Press the Controller.

   The current driving speed is saved as the speed warning.

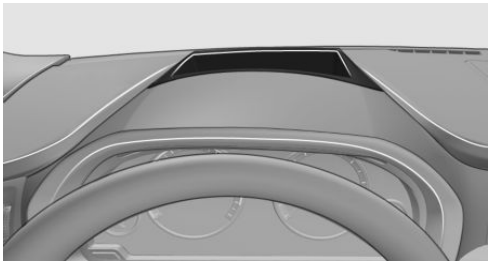
Head-Up Display

Principle

The system projects important information into the field of vision of the driver, for example speed.

The driver can register this information without having to divert attention from the road.

Overview



Visibility of the display

Visibility of the display on the Head-Up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- Certain seat positions.
- Items on the Head-Up Display cover.
- Sunglasses with certain polarisation filters.
- Wet road.
- Unfavourable lighting conditions.

If the picture is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Follow information on cleaning the Head-Up Display, see page 262.

Switching on/off

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed in the Head-Up Display:

- Speed.
- Navigation system.
- Check Control messages.
- Selection list from the instrument cluster.
- Driver Assistance Systems.

Some of this information is only shown briefly when needed.

Selecting displays on the Head-Up Display

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Information displayed"
6. Select desired display on Head-Up Display.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

Adjusting brightness

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient light.

The base setting can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The brightness of the Head-Up Display can also be influenced using the instrument lighting if the low-beam headlights are switched on.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

Adjusting height

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

Adjusting rotation

The image of the Head-Up Display can be rotated around its axis.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

Special windscreen

The windscreen constitutes part of the system.

The shape of the windscreen enables a precise projection.

A film in the windscreen prevents double images occurring.

For this reason, it is highly recommended for the special windscreen to be renewed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Vehicle status

General

Status can be displayed or actions performed for some systems.

Calling up the vehicle status

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"

Overview of the information

- "Flat Tyre Monitor": Status of the run-flat indicator, see page 124.
- "Tyre Pressure Monitor": Status of the Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 121.
- Resetting of Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 121.
- "Engine oil level": Electronic oil level check, see page 235.
- "AdBlue": BMW Diesel with BluePerformance, see page 217.
- "Check Control": Check Control messages are stored in the background and can be shown on the Control Display. Display of saved Check Control messages, see page 99.
- "Service requirements": Display of the service requirements, see page 102.
- "Teleservice Call": Teleservice Call.

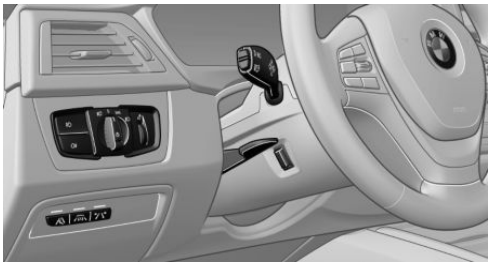
Lights

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Overview

Switch in the vehicle



The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Light functions

Symbol	Function
	Rear fog lights
	Front fog lights
	Automatic driving lights control Adaptive Headlights
0	Lights off Daytime driving lights
	Side lights
	Low-beam headlights
	Instrument lighting

Side lights, low-beam headlights and parking light

General

Switch position: 0 , ,

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lights are automatically switched off with these switch settings.

Side lights

Switch position:

The vehicle is illuminated all round.

You should not leave the side lights on for longer periods of time, since the vehicle battery could discharge and you might not have enough power to start the engine.

To park, switch on the one-sided parking light, see page 112.

Low-beam headlights

Switch position:

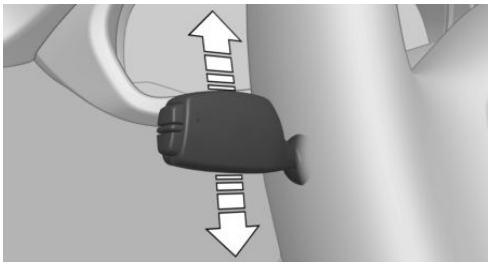
The low-beam headlights illuminate with the ignition switched on.

Parking lights

Principle

The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on



With the ignition switched off, push the lever upwards or downwards beyond the resistance point for approximately 2 seconds.

Switching off

Press the lever briefly in the opposite direction as far as the resistance point.

Welcome lights and headlight courtesy delay feature

Welcome lights

General

Depending on the equipment version, switch position or when parking the vehicle.

Individual light functions may be switched on briefly when the vehicle is unlocked, depending on the ambient brightness.

Activating/deactivating

On the Control Display:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "Welcome lights"

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

General

If the headlight flasher is activated after switching off the radio ready state, the low-beam headlights illuminate and remain on for a certain amount of time.

Setting the duration

On the Control Display:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "Home lights"
6. Set the duration.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

Automatic driving lights control

Principle

Depending on ambient brightness, the system switches the low-beam headlights on or off automatically, for example in a tunnel, at twilight and in rain or snow.

General

The headlights may also come on when the sun is sitting low in a blue sky.

When emerging from tunnels in daylight, low-beam headlights are not switched off immediately, but only after approximately 2 minutes.

The low-beam headlights always remain on when the fog lights are switched on.

Activating

Switch position: 

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated with the low-beam headlights switched on.

System limits

The automatic driving lights control is no substitute for your individual judgement of when it is necessary to switch on the lights.

The sensors are unable, for instance, to recognise fog or hazy weather. In such situations, switch on the lights manually to avoid any safety risk.

Daytime driving lights

General

Switch position: 0 , 

The daytime driving lights illuminate with the ignition switched on.

Activating/deactivating

In some countries daytime driving lights are compulsory, which is why the daytime driving lights cannot be deactivated.

On the Control Display:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

Adaptive Headlights

Principle

Adaptive Headlights is a variable headlight control system that makes it possible to illuminate the road surface responsively.

General

The beams from the headlights follow the road ahead on the basis of the steering angle and other parameters.

So as not to dazzle oncoming vehicles, the Adaptive Headlights do not swivel to the driver's side when stationary.

Depending on equipment, the Adaptive Headlights comprise one or more systems:

- Variable light distribution, see page 113.
- Cornering light, see page 114.

Activating

Switch position  with the ignition switched on.

Variable light distribution

Depending on the speed, the variable light distribution ensures even better illumination of the roadway.

The light distribution is automatically adapted to the speed.

- Urban lighting: the illumination area of the low-beam headlights is extended on the sides. The city light is switched on if the speed of 50 km/h, approximately 30 mph is not exceeded while accelerating or if the speed of 40 km/h, approximately 25 mph is undercut while braking.
- Motorway beam pattern: the illumination width of the low-beam headlights is expanded. The motorway beam pattern is switched on if the speed is above 110 km/h, approximately 68 mph for 30 seconds or as soon as the speed exceeds 140 km/h, approximately 87 mph.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

The motorway beam pattern is switched off as soon as the speed drops below 80 km/h, approximately 50 mph.

Cornering light

In sharp turns up to a specified speed, for example in hairpin bends or when cornering, either the fog lights or the cornering light switches on. This illuminates the inside of the curves better.

A cornering light is activated automatically depending on the steering angle or use of the turn indicators.

The cornering light may be switched on when driving in reverse, irrespective of the steering angle.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

Adaptive Headlights are faulty or have failed. Immediately have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

High-beam assistance

Principle

The high-beam assistance detects other road users at an early stage and activates or deactivates the high beam depending on the traffic situation. It ensures that the high-beam headlights are switched on when the traffic situation allows. The high-beam headlights are not switched on by the system in the low speed range.

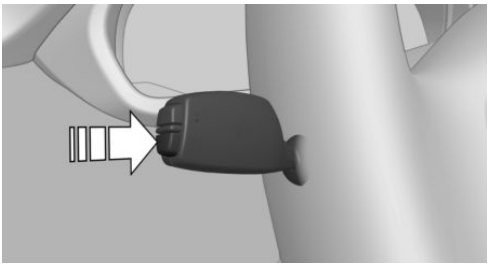
General

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate lighting, for example in built-up areas.

You can also control the lights yourself at any time and switch them on and off as usual.

If the vehicle is equipped with dazzle-free high-beam assistance, the high-beam headlights are not switched off due to oncoming vehicles, but are only masked in areas that would dazzle the oncoming vehicles. In this case, the blue indicator lamp continues to illuminate.

Activating



1. Depending on equipment, turn the light switch to position or .
2. Press the button on the turn indicator lever, arrow.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated with the low-beam headlights switched on.

The switchover between high and low-beam headlights takes place automatically.

The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates if the high beam is switched on by the system.

Deactivating

The high-beam assistance is deactivated by manually raising and dipping, see page 86. To reactivate high-beam assistance, press the button on the turn indicator lever.

System limits

The high-beam assistance cannot replace the personal decision to use the high-beam head-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

lights. In such situations you should dip the headlights manually to avoid a safety hazard.

In the following situations, the system will not operate or its operation will be impaired and your intervention may be required:

- During extremely unfavourable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists or horseback riders or carts, and when trains or ships are close to the road, or when game are passing across the road.
- On narrow bends, steep uphill or downhill gradients, at traffic junctions or if the view of oncoming vehicles on a motorway is obstructed.
- In poorly-lit towns and where there are very reflective signs.
- When the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.

Fog lights

Front fog lights

The side lights or low-beam headlights must be switched on.

Press the button. The green indicator lamp is illuminated.

If automatic driving lights control, see page 112, has been activated, the low-beam headlights illuminate automatically when the front fog lights are switched on.

Guiding fog lights

In switch position , a guide fog light for a wider illumination is also activated up to a speed of 110 km/h, 68 mph.

Rear fog lights

The low-beam headlights or front fog lights must be switched on.

Press the button. The yellow indicator lamp is illuminated.

If automatic driving lights control, see page 112, has been activated, the low-beam headlights come on automatically when the rear fog lights are switched on.

Left-hand/right-hand traffic

General

When driving in countries where the opposite rule of the road applies, you need to prevent your headlights from dazzling oncoming vehicles.

Xenon headlight

Light distribution of the headlights avoids dazzling of the low-beam headlights when driving in a country in which the traffic drives on the opposite side.

Adaptive Headlights

When driving in a country where you drive on the opposite side of the road from the country the vehicle is licensed, do not drive with the setting, otherwise this could cause a dazzling effect from the cornering light.

LED headlights

The Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop has light benders available. Proceed in accordance with the enclosed information when affixing the light benders to the headlights.

Adaptive Headlights

When driving in a country where you drive on the opposite side of the road from the country

the vehicle is licensed, do not drive with the setting, otherwise this could cause a dazzling effect from the variable light distribution.

Instrument lighting

Adjusting

The brightness can only be adjusted when the side lights or the low-beam headlights are switched on.

The brightness can be set using the knurled wheel.

Interior light

General

Depending on equipment, the interior light, the footwell lights, door entry lighting and the courtesy lighting are controlled automatically.

The brightness of some equipment is influenced by the knurled wheel for the instrument lighting.

Overview

1 Interior light

2 Reading lights

Switching the interior light on and off manually

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button for approximately three seconds.

Switch on again: press button.

Reading lights manually on and off

Press the button.

There are reading lights located at the front and in the rear beside the interior lights.

Ambient lighting

Depending on the equipment, the lighting in the interior can be set for a few lights.

Selecting colour scheme

On the Control Display:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Ambient lighting:"
6. Select the desired setting.

If the colour scheme of the line is selected and the welcome light is activated, the welcome light illuminates with the same colour as the line when released.

Adjusting brightness

Depending on equipment, the brightness of the ambient light can be set using the knurled wheel for the instrument lighting or on the Control Display.

On the Control Display:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"

4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Brightness:"
6. Adjusting brightness.

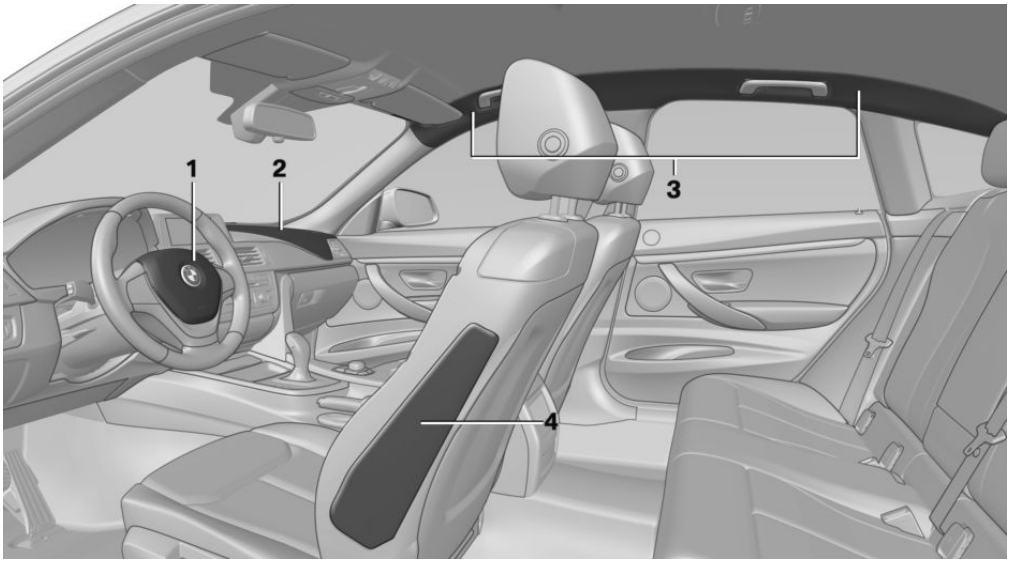
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Security

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a head-on collision where the action of the seat belts alone would be insufficient.

Side airbag

In a side-on crash, the side airbag supports the body from the side in the chest and pelvic area.

Head airbag

The head airbag supports the head in the event of a side-on collision.

Protective effect

Airbags are not activated by every collision, for example in minor accidents and rear-end collisions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Notes on optimum protective effect of the airbag

WARNING

If the seat position is wrong or the deployment area of the airbag is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide the intended protection, or may cause additional injuries when it deploys. Danger of injury or life. Comply with these notes for optimum protective effect.◄

- Keep your distance from the airbags.
- Make sure that vehicle occupants keep their head away from the side airbag.
- Always grip the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Place your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of injury to hands or arms when the airbag deploys.
- Make sure that the front-seat passenger is sitting correctly, in other words with feet or legs in the footwell, not resting them on the dashboard.
- Do not position any other persons, pets or objects between the airbags and persons.
- Never attach any material to the airbag covers with adhesive; never place material over them or modify them in any way.
- Keep the dashboard and windscreen in the area of the passenger's side free, for example do not attach adhesive foil or covers and do not fit brackets for navigation devices or mobile telephones.
- Do not use the front airbag cover on the front passenger's side as a tray.
- Do not fit seat covers, cushions or other objects not specifically suitable for seats with integral side airbags to the front seats.
- Do not hang items of clothing such as coats or jackets over the backrests.
- Do not modify individual components of the system or its wiring in any way. This also applies to the covers of the steering wheel, the dashboard and seats.
- Do not dismantle the airbag system.

Even if all these notes are complied with, depending on the circumstances in which an accident occurs, certain injuries as a result of contact with the airbag cannot be entirely ruled out.

The noise caused by the deployment of an airbag may lead to temporary hearing loss for vehicle occupants sensitive to noise.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety instructions

WARNING

Individual components of the airbag system can be hot after triggering. Danger of injury. Do not touch individual components.◄

WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the airbag system. If there is a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended in an accident, in spite of the accident being of the appropriate severity. Danger of injury or life. Have the airbag system tested, repaired or removed and scrapped by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◄

Correct function

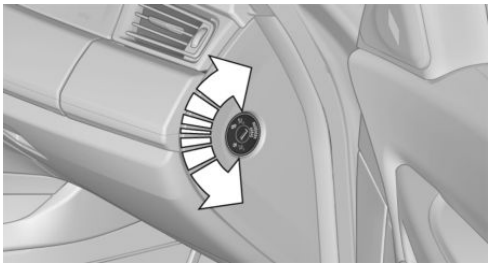
When the ignition is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster briefly illuminates in order to show the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

Airbag system disrupted

- Warning light does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on.
- Warning lamp is permanently illuminated.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Key switch for front passenger airbags

General



The front and side airbags for the front passenger can be deactivated and reactivated using the integrated key from the remote control.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags

1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the OFF position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the corresponding end position so that the airbags are deactivated.

The front passenger airbags are deactivated. The driver's airbags remain active.

If a child restraint system is no longer fitted in the front passenger seat, reactivate the front passenger airbags so that they are triggered as intended in the event of an accident.

The airbag condition is displayed on the front passenger airbag indicator lamp, see page 120.

Activating the front passenger airbags

1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the ON position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the corresponding end position so that the airbags are activated.

The front passenger airbags are reactivated and can deploy correctly if the need arises.

Indicator lamp for front passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags shows the operating status of the front passenger airbags.

After switching on the ignition, the light illuminates briefly and then shows whether the airbags are activated or deactivated.

- When front passenger airbags are deactivated, the indicator lamp remains illuminated.
- When front passenger airbags are activated, the indicator lamp is not illuminated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM

Principle

The system monitors the tyre pressure in the four fitted tyres. The system warns if the inflation pressure in one or more tyres has fallen considerably. To do this, the sensors in the tyre valves measure the tyre pressure and tyre temperatures.

General

To operate the system, also follow the other information and notes under tyre inflation pressure, see page 221.

Operating requirements

For the system, a reset must have been made with the correct tyre inflation pressure, otherwise reliable signalling of a flat tyre cannot be assured.

Reset the system after adjusting the tyre pressure to a new value and after a tyre or wheel change.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics to guarantee the system functions without errors.

Status display

On the radio, the current status of the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM can be shown on the, for example whether the TPM is active.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tyre Pressure Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Status Control Display

The tyre and system status is denoted by the wheel colour and some text on the Control Display.

All wheels green

System is active and is using the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

One wheel yellow

A flat tyre or major loss of tyre pressure in the tyre shown.

All wheels yellow

A flat tyre or major loss of tyre pressure in several tyres.

Wheels grey

The system cannot detect a flat tyre. The reasons for this are:

- System reset is performed.
- Malfunction.

Additional information

The current tyre inflation pressures and, depending on the model, tyre temperatures are also displayed in the status Control Display. The values shown are current values and may change due to the effect of driving mode or weather conditions.

Running reset

Reset the TPM after adjusting the tyre inflation pressure to a new value and after a tyre or wheel change.

Via iDrive and on the vehicle:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.
5. Resetting tyre inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
6. Drive off.

The wheels are shown grey and the status appears on the display.

After driving for a short time over 30 km/h, 19 mph the set tyre inflation pressures are accepted as target values. The reset is run automatically during the journey.

After a successfully concluded reset, the wheels are shown in green on the Control Display and "Tyre Pressure Monitor active. See label for recommended pressures." is shown.

You can interrupt your journey at any time. Reset resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

Messages

Message with required tyre inflation pressure test

A Check Control message is shown.

- ▷ System has detected a wheel change, but no reset has been run.

- ▷ No reset has been done to the system. The system uses the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.
- ▷ Filling was not performed according to the regulations.

A Check Control message is shown.

The tyre inflation pressure has dropped compared to the last reset.

In these cases:

1. Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.
2. Perform a reset of the system.

Message if tyre inflation pressure is too low

The yellow warning lamp is illuminated.

A Check Control message is shown.

- ▷ A loss in tyre inflation pressure occurred.
- ▷ No reset has been done to the system. The system uses the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

In these cases:

1. Reduce speed and continue driving at moderate speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph any longer.
2. At the next opportunity, for example filling station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.
3. Perform a reset of the system.

Message in the case of severe tyre inflation pressure loss

The yellow warning lamp is illuminated.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tyres is shown in the Check Control message.

- ▷ There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre pressure.
- ▷ No reset has been done to the system. The system uses the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning

In these cases:

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

   The symbol identifying run-flat tyres, see page 224, is the circle with the letters RSC on the tyre side wall.

WARNING

A damaged normal tyre with too low or missing tyre inflation pressure at all impairs driving properties, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. Danger of accidents. Do not continue to drive unless the vehicle is equipped with run-flat tyres.

Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.◄

When there is a message that the tyre inflation pressure is low, the Dynamic Stability Control DSC may be switched on.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

   To do this, check the air pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a tyre repair kit.

   If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the Tyre Pressure Monitor might not have been reset. Run reset.

   If it is not possible to identify tyre damage, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a tyre repair kit or by changing the wheel.

The use of tyre sealant, for example the Mobility System, can damage the TPM wheel electronics. If sealant is used, check the electronics as soon as you get an opportunity and have them replaced if necessary.

Run-flat tyres

Top speed

If a tyre has punctured you can continue your journey, driving at speeds up to a maximum of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Continuing a journey with a flat tyre

If you continue a journey with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph any longer.
3. As soon as you get an opportunity, check the tyre pressure in all four tyres.

   If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the Tyre Pressure Monitor might not have been reset. Run reset.

Maximum possible distance with a complete loss of tyre pressure:

The possible driving distance with a flat tyre depends on the load and strain on the vehicle during the journey.

With a moderate vehicle load, it is possible to travel approximately 80 km, 50 miles.

During the journey driving with damaged tyres, the vehicle handling changes, for example quicker loss of traction when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour. Adapt driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example curbs, potholes etc.

As the possible driving distance largely depends on the strain on the vehicle during the journey, this can be shorter, or longer if the driving style is more careful, according to speed, road condition, outside temperature, load etc.

WARNING

A damaged tyre with run-flat properties with low or missing tyre inflation pressure will change the driving properties, for example reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour. Danger of accidents.

Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.◄

WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can result in particularly heavy trailers starting to slalom. Danger of accident or damage to property.

When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, approximately 35 mph.

In case of swaying or fishtailing motions, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.◄

Final tyre failure

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed.

Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Parts of the tyre could detach, which could lead to an accident.

Do not continue driving, but contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

System limits

The system is not working correctly if no reset has been run, for example, a flat tyre is reported in spite of the correct tyre inflation pressure.

Tyre inflation pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre. By increasing tyre temperature, for example, when driving or with solar radiation, the tyre inflation pressure increases. Tyre inflation pressure decreases if the tyre temperature drops. Through this behaviour, a warning may be triggered if there are major temperature drops, due to the given warning limits.

No warning can be given by the system of extreme, sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is shown. No flat tyres or loss of tyre pressure can be detected.

Examples and recommendations for the following situations:

- Wheel without TPM electronics is fitted: have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if necessary.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
- TPM has not completed a reset. Run a reset of the system again.
- Fault due to systems or devices with the same frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.

Runflat indicator RPA

Principle

The system identifies a loss of tyre pressure by comparing the speeds of rotation of the individual wheels during the journey.

If a tyre loses pressure, its diameter changes. This in turn alters the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel. This is detected and reported as a flat tyre.

The system does not measure the tyre inflation pressure as such.

Operating requirements

The system must have been initialised with correct tyre inflation pressure, otherwise reliable signalling of a flat tyre cannot be assured. Each time the tyre pressure is adjusted or a tyre or wheel is changed, initialise the system again.

Status display

The current status of the runflat indicator can be shown, for example whether the RPA is active.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tyre Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialising

On initialisation, the current tyre pressures are saved as a reference for detection of a flat tyre. The initialisation is started by confirming the correct tyre inflation pressures.

When driving with snow chains fitted, do not initialise the system.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tyre Monitor"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.
5. Start initialisation: "Perform reset"
6. Drive off.

Initialising is completed during the journey; this process can be interrupted at any time.

Initialising resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

Message of a flat tyre

The yellow warning lamp is illuminated. A Check Control message is shown.

There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

   The symbol identifying run-flat tyres, see page 224, is the circle with the letters RSC on the tyre side wall.

WARNING

A damaged normal tyre with too low or missing tyre inflation pressure at all impairs driving properties, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. Danger of accidents. Do not continue to drive unless the vehicle is equipped with run-flat tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.◀

It is possible that Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated as soon as the message for a flat tyre appears.

System limits

A natural, even loss of tyre pressure in all four tyres that occurs over time is not detected. Consequently, check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.

No warning can be given in the event of sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.

In the following situations, the system could be slow to respond or operate incorrectly:

- If the system has not been initialised.
- Journey on snow-covered or slippery surfaces.
- Dynamic driving style: causing the drive gears to spin, high lateral acceleration.
- Driving with snow chains.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

   To do this, check the air pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a tyre repair kit.

   If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the runflat indicator might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

   If it is not possible to identify tyre damage, contact a Service Partner of the manufac-

turer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a tyre repair kit or by changing the wheel.

Run-flat tyres

Top speed

If a tyre has punctured you can continue your journey, driving at speeds up to a maximum of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Continuing a journey with a flat tyre

If you continue a journey with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph any longer.
3. As soon as you get an opportunity, check the tyre pressure in all four tyres.

   If all four tyres are inflated to the correct pressures, the runflat indicator might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

Maximum possible distance with tyres entirely deflated:

The possible driving distance with a flat tyre depends on the load and strain on the vehicle during the journey.

With a moderate vehicle load, it is possible to travel approximately 80 km, 50 miles.

During the journey driving with damaged tyres, the vehicle handling changes, for example quicker loss of traction when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour. Adapt driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example curbs, potholes etc.

As the possible driving distance largely depends on the strain on the vehicle during the journey, this can be shorter, or longer if the driving style is more careful, according to speed, road condition, outside temperature, load etc.

WARNING

A damaged tyre with run-flat properties with low or missing tyre inflation pressure will change the driving properties, for example reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour. Danger of accidents.

Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.◀

WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can result in particularly heavy trailers starting to slalom. Danger of accident or damage to property.

When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, approximately 35 mph.

In case of swaying or fishtailing motions, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.◀

Final tyre failure

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed.

Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Parts of the tyre could detach, which could lead to an accident.

Do not continue driving, but contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Intelligent Safety

Principle

Intelligent Safety permits central operation of driver assistance systems.

Depending on equipment, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems which can

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

help to avoid the risk of a collision. These systems are automatically active each time you start the engine with the start/stop button:

- Front-end collision, see page 127.
- Person warning, see page 133.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not take your personal responsibility from you. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued, are issued too late, or are issued incorrectly. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◄

WARNING

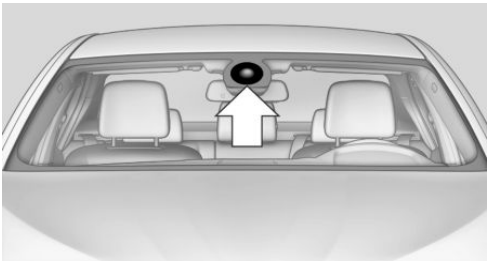
Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems, for example front-end collision warning with light braking function. Danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◄

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is in the area of the base of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear view mirror.

Switching on/off

The Intelligent Safety Systems are active automatically at the start of each journey.

Press button: the systems are switched off again. LED turns off.

Press button again: the systems are switched on. LED is illuminated.

Settings can be adjusted on the Control Display.

Front-end collision warning

Depending on the equipment, the front-end collision warning consists of one of the two systems:

- Front-end collision with city braking function, see page 128.
- Front-end collision with braking function, see page 130.

Front-end collision warning with city braking function

Principle

The system can help avoid accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision and brakes automatically, as necessary.

The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.

The system is controlled by a camera in the area of the rear-view mirror.

The front-end collision warning is also available if the Cruise Control is disabled.

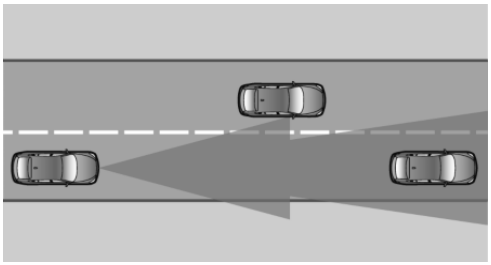
When deliberately approaching a vehicle, the approach control warning and braking intervention are activated later to avoid unjustified system responses.

General

The system warns from approximately 5 km/h, approximately 3 mph in two stages of any risk of collision with vehicles. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

Up to approximately 60km/h, 35 mph.

Detection range



Objects are taken into account if they are detected by the system.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not take your personal responsibility from you. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued, are issued too late, or are issued incorrectly. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◄

WARNING

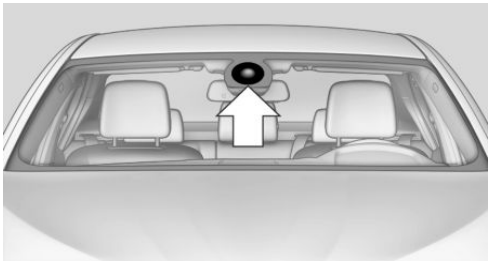
Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems, for example front-end collision warning with light braking function. Danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◄

Overview

Button in the vehicle

 Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is in the area of the base of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear view mirror.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching off

Press the button: the system is switched off. LED turns off.

Press the button again: the system is switched on. LED is illuminated.

Setting warning time

The warning time can be set using iDrive.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Warning point"
5. Select the desired setting.

The selected time is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol illuminates red: advance warning. Increase braking and distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. System indicates that you must brake and/or manoeuvre the vehicle yourself.

Advance warning

An advance warning is shown, for example if a danger of collision is anticipated or there is a very short distance to a vehicle ahead.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an advance warning.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is shown in the event of an immediate collision if the vehicle approaches an object with high differential speed.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by slight automatic brake intervention if there is a risk of collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

Brake intervention

The warning requires to take action yourself. Maximum braking force is used during a warning. In order for braking force support to be used, it is necessary for the brake to be pressed sufficiently quickly and powerfully. In addition, the system may also support with a small amount of braking if there is the risk of a

collision. The vehicle can be braked at low speed until it comes to a stop.

Manual gearbox: When brakes are engaged until it comes to a stop, the engine may shut off.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

Braking can be discontinued either by pressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Detection of objects can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◄

Detection range

The detection ability of the system is limited.

For this reason, system responses may be missing or delayed.

It is possible that the following are not detected:

- Slow-moving vehicle when approaching at high speed.
- Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- Vehicles with unusual rear view.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.

Restrictions of the function

The function can be restricted, for example in the following situations:

- In thick fog, rain, spray or snowfall.
- On sharp bends.
- When restricting or deactivating vehicle stability control systems, for example DSC OFF.
- If, depending on equipment, the field of view of the camera in the mirror or the radar sensor is soiled or covered.
- Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- During the calibration process of the camera immediately after the vehicle is supplied.
- When there is sustained glare effect due to light opposite, for example the sun low in the sky.

Sensitivity of the warnings

The greater the sensitivity of the warning settings, for example warning time, the more warnings will be displayed. As a result, there may be an increased number of incorrect warnings.

Forward alert with braking function

Principle

The system can help avoid accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision and brakes automatically, as necessary.

The brakes are applied automatically with limited braking force for a limited period.

When equipped with Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, the front-end collision warning is controlled by the radar sensor of the Cruise Control.

The front-end collision warning is also available if the Cruise Control is disabled.

When deliberately approaching a vehicle, the front-end collision warning and braking inter-

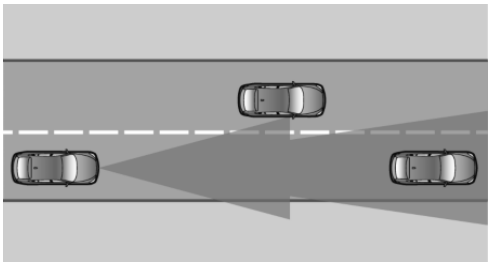
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

vention are activated later to avoid unjustified system responses.

General

The system will provide a warning from approximately 5 km/h, approximately 3 mph in two stages of any possible risk of collision with vehicles. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

Detection range



Objects are taken into account if they are detected by the system.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not take your personal responsibility from you. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued, are issued too late, or are issued incorrectly. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◄

WARNING

Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems, for example front-end collision warning with light braking function. Danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◄

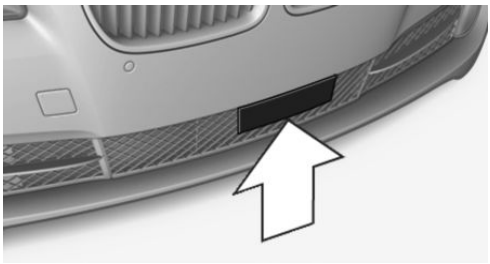
Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Radar sensor

There is a radar sensor in the bumper to detect vehicles travelling in front.



Keep radar sensor clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switch off

Press the button: the system is switched off. LED turns off.

Press the button again: the system is switched on. LED is illuminated.

Setting warning time

The warning time can be set using iDrive.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Warning point"
5. Select the desired setting.

The selected time is saved for the currently used profile.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol illuminates red: advance warning. Increase braking and distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. System indicates that you must brake and/or manoeuvre the vehicle yourself.

Advance warning

An advance warning is shown, for example if a danger of collision is anticipated or there is a very short distance to a vehicle ahead.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an advance warning.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is shown in the event of an immediate collision if the vehicle approaches an object with high differential speed.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is supported by automatic brake intervention if there is a risk of collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

Brake intervention

The detection of objects can be influeneced by technical system limitations, e. g. pedestrians or stationary objects. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

The warning requires to take action yourself. Maximum braking force is used during a warning. In order for braking force support to be used, it is necessary for the brake to be pressed sufficiently quickly and powerfully. In addition, the system may also support with automatic braking if there is the risk of a collision. The vehicle can be braked until it comes to a stop.

Manual gearbox: When brakes are engaged until it comes to a stop, the engine may shut off.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

Above approximately 210 km/h, approximately 130 mph the braking intervention is done as a short braking jerk. There is no automatic delay.

Braking can be discontinued either by pressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◄

Detection range

The detection ability of the system is limited.

For this reason, system responses may be missing or delayed.

It is possible that the following are not detected:

- Slow-moving vehicle when approaching at high speed.
- Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- Vehicles with unusual rear view.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.
- Pedestrians.
- Stationary objects.

Restrictions of the function

The function can be restricted, for example in the following situations:

- In thick fog, rain, spray or snowfall.
- On sharp bends.
- When restricting or deactivating vehicle stability control systems, for example DSC OFF.
- If the radar sensor is dirty or covered.

Sensitivity of the warnings

The greater the sensitivity of the warning settings, for example warning time, the more warnings will be displayed. As a result, there may be an increased number of incorrect warnings.

Person warning with City light braking function

Principle

The system can help to avoid accidents with pedestrians.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision with pedestrians in the urban speed area and also contains a braking function.

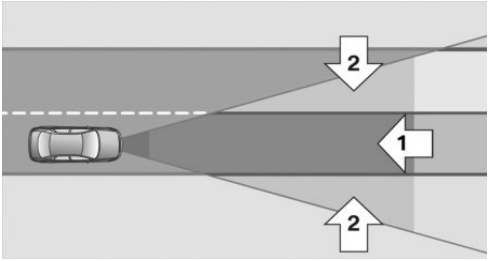
The system is controlled by the camera in the area of the rear-view mirror.

General

The system warns with sufficient brightness from approximately 10 km/h, approximately 6 mph up to approximately 60 km/h, approximately 35 mph of any risk of collision with pedestrians and supports this by briefly applying the brakes before a collision.

Here, persons are taken into account if they are located within the detection range of the system.

Detection range



The detection zone in front of the vehicle consists of two parts:

- Central zone, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Extended zone, arrow 2, at right and left.

There is a risk of collision if persons are in the central zone. A warning is only given of persons in the extended zone if they are moving in the direction of the central zone.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not take your personal responsibility from you. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued, are issued too late, or

are issued incorrectly. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◄

WARNING

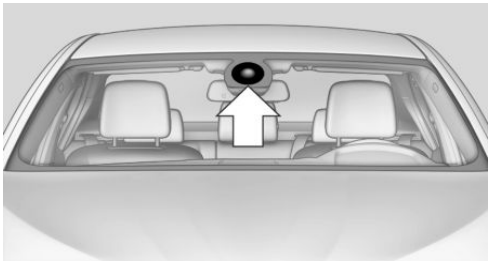
Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems, for example front-end collision warning with light braking function. Danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◄

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is in the area of the base of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear view mirror.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching off

Press button: the systems are switched off again. LED turns off.

Press button again: the systems are switched on. LED is illuminated.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected person, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Red symbol is displayed and an acoustic warning sounds.

Take action yourself immediately, by braking or swerving.

Brake intervention

The warning requires to take action yourself. Maximum braking force is used during a warning. In order for braking force support to be used, it is necessary for the brake to be pressed sufficiently quickly and powerfully. In addition, the system may also support with a small amount of braking if there is the risk of a collision. The vehicle can be braked at low speed until it comes to a stop.

Manual gearbox: When brakes are engaged until it comes to a stop, the engine may shut off.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

Braking can be discontinued either by pressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Detection of objects can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◄

Detection range

The detection capacity of the camera is limited.

This is why it can occur that no warnings are issued or they are issued late.

It is possible that the following are not detected:

- Partially concealed pedestrians.
- Pedestrians who are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- Pedestrians outside the detection range.
- Pedestrians under a height of approximately 80 cm, 32 in.

Restrictions of the function

The function may be restricted or not available in the following situations, for example:

- In thick fog, rain, spray or snowfall.
- On sharp bends.
- When deactivating vehicle stability control systems, for example DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera and/or the windscreen is dirty or covered.
- Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- During the calibration process of the camera immediately after the vehicle is supplied.
- When there is sustained glare effect due to light opposite, for example the sun low in the sky.
- In the dark.

Lane departure warning

Principle

This system warns if the vehicle leaves the lane, when the vehicle is on roads with lane markings and travelling above a given speed. Depending on country version, this speed is between 55 km/h, approximately 35 mph and 70 km/h, approximately 45 mph.

When switching on the system below this speed, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

When there are warnings, the steering wheel starts to vibrate slightly. The timing of this warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not issue a warning if the driver indicates before leaving the driving lane.

Safety note

WARNING

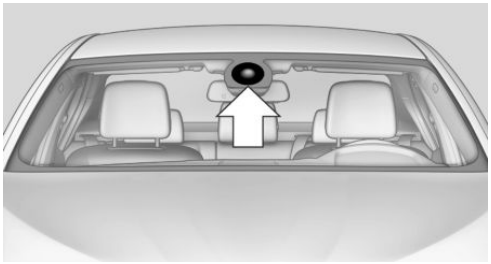
The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the course of the road and traffic situation. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it. Do not move the steering wheel with unnecessary force in case of warnings.◄

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Lane departure warning

Camera



The camera is in the area of the base of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear view mirror.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

- On: LED is illuminated.
- Off: LED turns off.

The setting is stored for the currently used profile.

Display in the instrument cluster

- Lines: the system is activated.
- Arrows: at least one lane boundary line has been detected and warnings can be issued.

Output of the warning

If the vehicle leaves the driving lane and a lane marking is detected, the steering wheel starts to vibrate.

If the turn indicator is set before changing lanes, no warning is issued.

Cancellation of the warning

The warning is interrupted in the following situations:

- Automatically after approximately 3 seconds.
- On returning to the correct lane.
- With strong braking.
- On indicating.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◄

Restrictions of the function

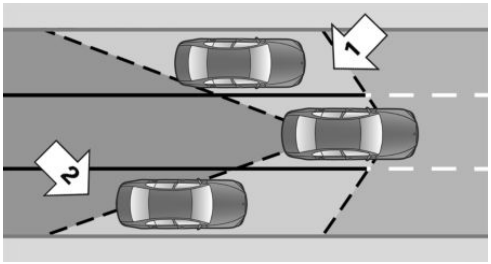
The function can be restricted, for example in the following situations:

- In thick fog and heavy rain or snow.
- With missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous boundary lines, for example in areas where there are road works.
- If boundary lines are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- On sharp bends or narrow roads.

- If the boundary lines are not white.
- If boundary lines are obscured.
- If the vehicle is moving too close to the vehicle ahead.
- With bright oncoming light.
- When the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.
- During the calibration process of the camera immediately after the vehicle is supplied.

Lane change warning

Principle



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind and beside the vehicle as of approximately 20 km/h, approximately12 mph.

In some equipment configurations, the radar sensors are active from approximately 50 km/h, approximately 30 mph.

The system indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot, arrow 1, or are approaching from the rear on an adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror housing illuminates at a dimmed level.

Before changing lanes with the turn indicator switched on, the system issues a warning the above situations.

The light in the exterior mirror housing flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Safety note

WARNING

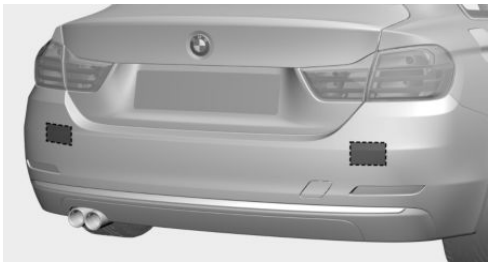
The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the visibility conditions and the traffic situation. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Lane change warning

Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

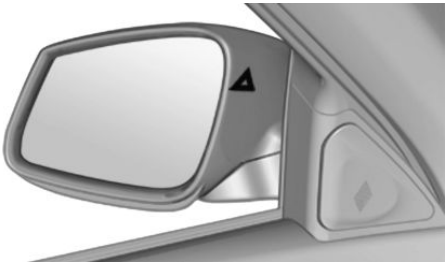
- On: LED is illuminated.

▷ Off: LED turns off.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

Display

Light in the exterior mirror housing



Advance warning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror housing indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot or are approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

If the turn indicator is set while a vehicle is in the critical area, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror housing flashes brightly.

The warning is terminated when indicating is completed or the other vehicle has left the critical area.

Brief flash

A brief flash of the light when unlocking the vehicle is used as a self-test of the system.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◄

Restrictions of the function

The function can be restricted in the following situations:

▷ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is very much higher than that of your own speed.

▷ In thick fog and heavy rain or snow.

▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.

▷ If the bumper is soiled, iced-over or a sticker is attached to it.

▷ With projecting transported load.

The system cannot be switched on when the trailer socket is occupied, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier. A Check Control message is shown.

A Check Control message is displayed in the event of limited functionality.

Manual speed limiter

Principle

With the system, the speed can be restricted from a value of 30 km/h/20 mph. There are no restrictions below the set speed limit.

Exceeding the speed limit

In particular situations the speed limit can be deliberately exceeded by accelerating strongly.

The system gives a warning if the travelling speed exceeds the set speed limit.

No brake intervention

If the set speed limit has been reached or unintentionally exceeded (for example driving downhill) there is no brake intervention.

If you set a speed limit during the journey which is below the current speed, the vehicle

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

rolls until the driving speed drops below the speed limit.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Press the button	Function
LIM	Switching system on/off, see page 139
	Rocker switch: Change speed limit, see page 139

Controls

Switching on

LIM Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is assumed as the speed limit.

When switching on when at a standstill or driving at low speed, 30 km/h/20 mph is set as the speed limit.

The speedometer marker is set to the corresponding speed.

When activating the speed limit it is possible that Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated and the drive mode is changed to COMFORT.

Switching off

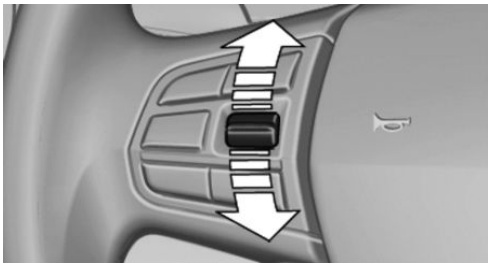
LIM Press the button on the steering wheel.

For example, the system is also deactivated in the following situations:

- When engaging reverse gear.
- When switching the engine off.
- When switching on Cruise Control.
- When activating some programs using the drive experience switch.

The indicators turn off.

Change speed limit



Press the rocker switch repeatedly upwards or downwards until the desired speed limit is set.

- Every time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit is increased or decreased by approximately 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the speed limit is increased or decreased to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the speedometer display.

If you set a speed limit during the journey which is below the current speed, the vehicle rolls until the driving speed drops below the speed limit.

Exceeding the speed limit

You may intentionally exceed the speed limit. There is no acoustic warning in such a case.

To intentionally exceed the set speed limit, completely depress the accelerator pedal.

If the speed drops below the set speed limit, it is automatically reactivated.

Warning

Visual warning

LIM The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster flashes if the set speed limit is

exceeded for as long as you exceed the set speed limit.

Acoustic warning

- If you unintentionally exceed the set speed limit, you will hear an acoustic warning after approximately five seconds.
- If the speed limit is reduced to below the current speed during the journey, the warning sounds after approximately 30 seconds.
- If you intentionally exceed the speed limit by fully depressing the accelerator pedal, no warning is given.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Marking of the speed limit

Display in the speedometer:

- Marker illuminates green: the system is active.
- Marker does not illuminate: the system is inactive.

Indicator lamp

LIM

- If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on.
- If the indicator lamp is flashing: set speed limit is exceeded.

Brief status display

LIMIT 90 Set speed limit briefly appears.

Dynamic brake lights

Principle

Road users behind your vehicle are warned of an emergency braking by the brake lights flashing. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General

- Normal braking: brake lights illuminate.
- Severe braking: brake lights flash.

Shortly before the vehicle comes to a standstill, the hazard warning lights are activated.

Deactivating the hazard warning lights:

- Accelerating.
- Press the hazard warning lights button.

Active Protection

General

The Active Protection safety package consists of systems independent of each other:

- Attentiveness assistant.
- PreCrash.
- PostCrash.

Attentiveness assistant

Principle

The system can detect decreasing attentiveness or tiring of the driver on long monotonous journeys, for example on motorways. In this situation, it is recommended that you take a break.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate your physical condition. Increasing inattention or fatigue might not be detected, or not in good time. Danger of accidents. Make sure that the drive is rested and alert. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions.◀

Function

The system is switched on every time the engine is started and cannot be switched off.

After the start of the drive, the system is adapted to the driver so that an decrease in attention or fatigue can be detected.

This process considers the following criteria:

- Personal driving style, for example, steering.
- Drive conditions, for example, time of day, duration of drive.

The system is active from approximately. 70 km/h, 43 mph and can display a recommendation to take a break.

Recommendation to take a break

With decreasing attention or tiredness of the driver, a note is shown on the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

A recommendation to take a break will only be displayed once during an uninterrupted journey.

After a break, at the earliest another break recommendation may be displayed after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be restricted in situations such as the following and no warning or a wrong one is triggered:

- If the time is set incorrectly.
- If the speed driven falls considerably below 70 km/h, 43 mph.
- For dynamic driving style, for example, with heavy acceleration or fast cornering.
- In active drive situations, for example, frequent lane changes.
- With poor road conditions.
- With strong side-wind.

The system is reset approximately 45 minutes after the vehicle is stopped, for example when taking a break during a long motorway journey.

PreCrash

Principle

The system can detect critical driving situations from 30 km/h/20 mph onwards, which could cause an accident. In these situations, automatically preventative, protective measures are taken to minimise the risk of accident.

Critical driving situations are, for example:

- Full braking.
- Heavy understeering.
- Heavy oversteering.

When collision warning or front-end collision warning with light braking function is fitted, within the limits of the system, threatened collisions into vehicles in front or stationary vehicles are detected.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you. Critical situations cannot be detected reliably or in good time due to limitations of the system. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Function

After the seat belt is fastened, the front seat belts are automatically tightened once when driving away.

When driving in critical situations, the following individual functions become active as required:

- The front seat belts are automatically pretensioned.
- The windows are automatically closed.
- The Glass Roof automatically closes.

After a critical driving situation without accident, the front seat belts are released again. All other systems can be put back into the desired setting.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and open the seat belt using the red button in the lock section. Fasten the seat belt again before continuing your journey.

PostCrash

Principle

The system can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill in certain accident situations without the involvement of the driver. The risk of a further collision and its consequences can thereby be reduced.

Braking the vehicle more strongly

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a standstill more quickly.

To do this, a higher brake pressure than in automatic braking must be applied for a short period when the brake pedal is pressed. The automatic braking is interrupted as a result.

Cancelling automatic braking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to break off the automatic braking, such as for an evasive manoeuvre.

Cancel automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

At a standstill

After reaching a standstill, the brake is automatically triggered.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Anti-lock Brake System, ABS

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied.

Steering control is retained even in the event of full braking, enhancing active road safety.

ABS is ready to operate each time the engine is started.

Brake assist

When brake is pressed quickly, this system automatically applies maximum braking power assistance. With full braking, this keeps the braking distance as short as possible. It also makes full use of the advantages offered by ABS.

Maintain pressure on the brake during the entire brake application.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

Principle

The system reduces engine output and applies the brakes on individual wheels, helping, within the limits imposed by the laws of physics, to keep the vehicle safely on course.

General

The Dynamic Stability Control detects the following unstable driving conditions, for example:

- Loss of traction at the rear which can lead to oversteer.
- Loss of grip of the front wheels which can lead to understeer.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC, see page 144, is a variant of DSC optimised for forward momentum.

Safety instructions

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable way in all traffic conditions. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with a roof rack, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. Danger of accident or damage to property. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with a roof load.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Overview

Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF button

Indicator and warning lights

If indicator light is flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking forces.

If indicator light is illuminated: DSC has failed.

Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

General

Driving stability during acceleration and cornering is restricted if DSC is deactivated.

To support the driving stability, re-activate DSC as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Press and hold down the button – but for no longer than approximately 10 seconds – until the DSC OFF indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated and DSC OFF is displayed.

DSC is switched off.

Steering and, depending on equipment, suspension are tuned for dynamic driving.

Activating DSC

Press the button.

The DSC OFF and DSC OFF indicator lamps are not illuminated.

Indicator and warning lamps

DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster when DSC is deactivated.

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC is deactivated.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC

Principle

DTC is a variant of the DSC optimised for forward momentum.

In particular road conditions, for example roads on which snow has not been cleared or unconsolidated ground, system ensures maximum forward momentum but limited driving stability.

There is maximum traction with DTC activated. Driving stability is limited on accelerating and cornering.

Therefore, drive with the appropriate caution.

In the following exceptional situations it may be best to activate DTC for a short time:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- If the vehicle has to be rocked out of or started in deep snow or on a loose surface.
- Driving with snow chains.

Deactivating/activating Dynamic Traction Control, DTC

Activating DTC

Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light no longer illuminate.

xDrive

xDrive is the four-wheel drive system available in your vehicle. The combination of xDrive and DSC further optimises traction and driving dynamics. The xDrive four-wheel drive system distributes the drive forces variably to the front and rear axles based on the driving situation and the condition of the road.

Dynamic Damper Control

Principle

The system reduces unwanted vehicle movements when a dynamic driving style is used or on uneven roads.

Depending on the road condition and the driving style, this enhances driving dynamics and driving comfort.

Programs

The system provides different programs.

The programmes can be selected using the drive experience switch.

SPORT

Resolute sports regulation of the shock absorbers for greater agility when driving.

SPORT+

Resolute sports regulation of the shock absorbers for greater agility when driving, with restricted driving stability.

COMFORT/ECO PRO

Balanced vehicle control.

Variable sports steering

The variable sports steering amplifies the steering angle of the front wheels when the steering wheel is fully turned, for example in tight bends or when parking. The steering becomes more direct.

It also varies the force required when steering, depending on the speed.

This enables a sports-oriented steering response. In addition, steering is made easier during parking and manoeuvring.

Drive experience switch

Principle

With the drive experience switch, certain properties of the vehicle can be adjusted. Various programs can be selected for this. Using the drive experience button and using the DSC OFF button, one program can be activated in each case.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Operation of the programs

Press the button	Program
	DSC OFF TRACTION
	SPORT+ SPORT COMFORT ECO PRO

Automatic program change

In the following situations, there may be an automatic switch to COMFORT:

- Failure of the Dynamic Damper Control.
- Failure of the Dynamic Stability Control DSC.
- In the event of a flat tyre.
- When switching on the manual speed limiter, see page 138.
- When activating Cruise Control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

DSC OFF

When you select DSC OFF, see page 144, driving stability during acceleration and cornering is restricted.

TRACTION

With TRACTION you have maximum traction on loose surfaces. Dynamic Traction Control, DTC, see page 144, is activated. Driving stability is limited on accelerating and cornering.

SPORT+

Sporty driving with optimised suspension and adapted drive with restricted driving stability.

Dynamic Traction Control is switched on.

Driver assumes part of the task of stabilising the vehicle.

Activating SPORT+

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT+ is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Automatic program change

When activating the Cruise Control, the SPORT mode is automatically selected.

Indicator and warning lamps

SPORT+ is displayed in the instrument cluster.

If the indicator lamp DSC OFF is illuminated: Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

SPORT

Depending on equipment, resolute sports configuration of the suspension, steering and drive for greater agility when driving, with maximum driving stability.

The program can be configured individually. The configuration is saved for the currently used profile.

Activating SPORT

Press button until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring SPORT

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. Where applicable, "Driving Experience Control" or "Driving mode"
4. "Configure SPORT"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

COMFORT

For a balanced configuration with maximum driving stability.

Activating COMFORT

Press button until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

In certain situations, there is an automatic switch into the COMFORT program, automatic program change, see page 146.

ECO PRO

ECO PRO provides consistent fuel consumption-reducing adjustment for maximum range at maximum driving stability.

Comfort functions and the engine control are adjusted.

The program can be configured individually.

Activate ECO PRO

Press the button until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. Where applicable, "Driving Experience Control" or "Driving mode"
4. "Configure ECO PRO"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Configuring drive program

Under configure drive mode, settings for the following drive programs can be made:

- SPORT, see page 146.
- ECO PRO, see page 205.

Displays

Program selection

On pushing the button, a list of programs that can be selected is displayed. Depending on equipment, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from what is displayed.

Selected program

The selected program is shown in the instrument cluster.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

The system provides support when driving off on upward gradients. It is not necessary to use the parking brake for this.

Driving off with drive-off assistant

1. Hold the vehicle in place by pressing the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

The vehicle is held for approximately 2 seconds after the foot brake has been released.

The possible holding duration is 2 minutes, given corresponding equipment.

Depending on the vehicle's load or when towing a trailer, the vehicle may roll backwards a little.

Servotronic

Principle

The Servotronic varies the steering force required when steering, depending on the speed. At low speeds the steering force is heavily supported, in other words a slight force is needed when steering With increasing speed the support for the steering force is reduced.

In addition, steering force is adapted according to drive program, giving a sporty/direct or comfortable steering response.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Driving comfort

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function, ACC

Principle

This system allows a desired speed and a distance from a vehicle driving in front to be set using the buttons on the steering wheel.

On the open road, the desired speed is maintained by the system, for which purpose the vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If there is a vehicle driving in front, the system adapts your own vehicle's speed within the limits of its capability so the set distance from the vehicle driving in front is maintained.

The distance can be set to various stages, and is dependent on the particular speed for reasons of safety.

If the vehicle ahead brakes to a standstill and sets off again shortly afterwards, the system can comprehend this within the given framework.

General

Characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas depending on vehicle setting.

Safety instructions

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable way in all traffic conditions. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◄

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◄

WARNING

The desired speed can be inadvertently set incorrectly or called up. Danger of accidents. Adapt the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◄

WARNING

Danger of accident due to excessive speed differences compared to other vehicles, for example in the following situations:

- Quickly approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- Another vehicle suddenly veering into the vehicle's own lane.

▷ Quickly approaching stationary vehicles.

Danger of injury or life. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

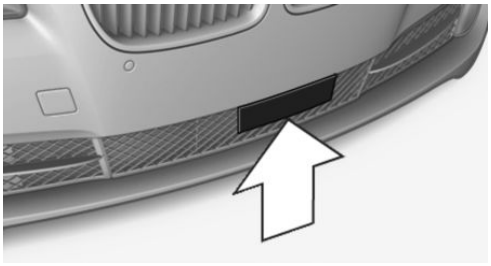
Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Press the button	Function
	Cruise Control on/off, interrupt, see page 150
	Call up speed, resume Cruise Control, see page 152
	Reduce distance, see page 151
	Increase distance, see page 151
	Rocker switch: Setting speed, see page 151

Radar sensor

There is a radar sensor in the bumper to detect vehicles travelling in front.



Keep radar sensor clean and clear.

Functional requirements

Speed range

The optimum area of use is on well-constructed roads.

Minimum speed that can be set is 30 km/h/20 mph. The maximum speed which can be set depends on the vehicle.

The system can also be activated when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Faster desired speeds can also be selected with switched-off distance control, see page 152.

Switching the Cruise Control on/off and interrupting

Switching on

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

Indicator lamps are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the speedometer marker is set to the current speed.

Cruise Control can be used.

DSC is switched on if necessary.

Switching off

When switching off with the vehicle at a standstill, press the brake at the same time.

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

▷ When activated: press twice.

▷ When interrupted: press once.

The indicators turn off. The saved desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

If you interrupt when the vehicle is at a standstill, press the brake at the same time.

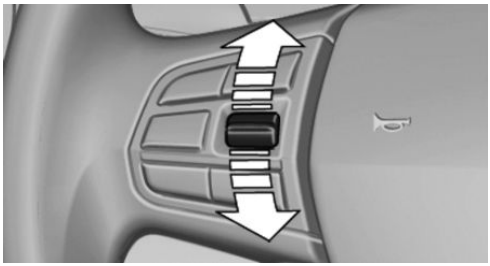
Interrupting automatically

The system interrupts automatically in the following situations:

- If the driver applies the brakes.
- If the selector lever is moved out of selector lever position D.
- If DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- If DSC intervenes.
- If with the driver experience switch SPORT + is activated.
- If the vehicle is stationary and the seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- If the system does not detect any objects for a lengthy period of time, for example on infrequently driven roads without defined boundaries.
- If the detection zone of the radar is disrupted, for example, due to contamination or heavy rainfall.
- After an extended stationary period, if the vehicle was decelerated by the system to a standstill.

Setting speed

Maintaining speed, saving



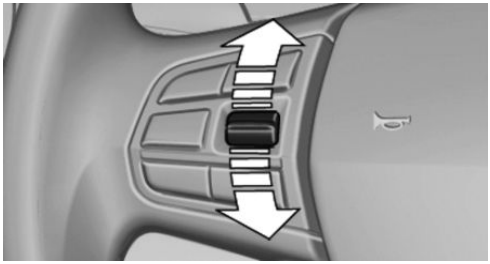
During the interruption, press the rocker switch.

With the system switched on, the driven speed is maintained and saved as the desired speed.

The saved speed is displayed in the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster, see page 152.

DSC is switched on if necessary.

Changing speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly upwards or downwards until the desired speed is set.

With the system active, the speed that is then shown is set and will be achieved on a clear road.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed up to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased by approximately 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the speedometer display.

Hold the rocker switch in one position to repeat the corresponding action.

Set distance

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you. Braking may be performed too late because of system limitations. Danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the traffic conditions attentively at all

times. Adapt the distance to traffic and weather conditions, and comply with the prescribed safe distance by braking if necessary.◄

Reducing distance

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, see page 153, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Increasing distance

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, see page 153, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Resuming Cruise Control

General

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the saved speed.

Before calling up the saved speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the saved speed is not excessively large. Otherwise, there may be inadvertent braking or acceleration.

The saved speed value is deleted and can no longer be called up in the following instances:

- When the system is switched off.
- When the ignition is switched off.

Resuming saved speed and distance

RES

With the system switched on, press the button.

Switching distance control off/on

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not react to traffic travelling in front of you, but maintains the saved speed. Danger of accident or damage to property. Adapt the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake if necessary.◄

Switching distance control off

Press and hold the button or

Press and hold the button.

Press the button again briefly to switch the distance control back on.

A Check Control message is displayed after changing over the distance control.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Desired speed and saved speed

- Green mark illuminated: system is active, the mark shows the desired speed.
- Orange/white mark illuminated: system is interrupted, the mark shows the saved speed.
- Marker does not illuminate: the system is inactive.

Brief status display

Selected desired speed.

If no speed is displayed, the conditions required for operation may not be fulfilled at the moment.

Vehicle distance

The selected distance to the vehicle ahead is displayed.

Distance indicator	
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3 Automatically set after switching on the system. Corresponds to approximately half of the value in the speedometer display, expressed in metres.
	Distance 4
	System interrupted or distance control briefly disabled because the accelerator pedal is pressed although a vehicle is not detected.
	Distance control briefly suppressed because the accelerator pedal is pressed while a vehicle is detected.

Detected vehicle

Symbol illuminates orange:

Preceding vehicle detected.

Rolling bars: the detected vehicle has driven off.

ACC does not accelerate. To accelerate, activate ACC by briefly depressing the accelerator pedal or pressing the RES button or rocker switch.

Indicator and warning lamps

Symbol flashes orange:

The requirements for operation of the system are no longer being met.

The system was deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or the accelerator pedal.

Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds:

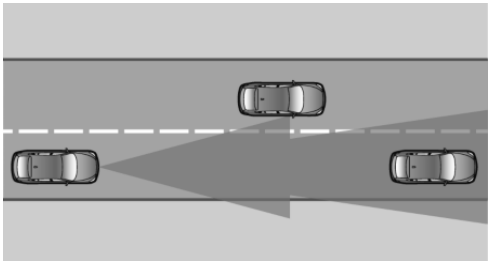
System indicates that you must brake and/or manoeuvre the vehicle yourself.

Displays on the Head-Up Display

Some information from the system can also be shown on Head-Up Display.

System limits

Detection range



The detection capability of the system and automatic braking capacity are limited.

For example, two-wheeled vehicles in front possibly may not be detected.

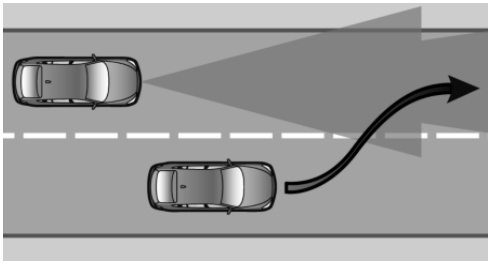
Deceleration

The system does not decelerate your vehicle when a standing obstacle is in the same lane, for example a vehicle at a red light or at the end of a traffic jam.

The system does not respond either in the following situations:

- Pedestrians or similar slow road users.
- Red traffic lights.
- Stationary objects.
- Crossing traffic.
- Oncoming vehicles.

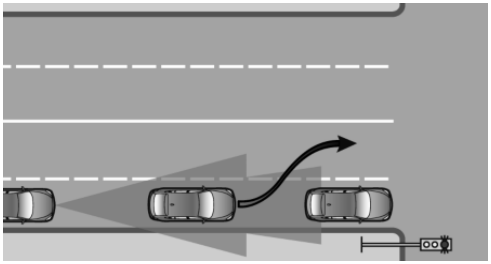
Vehicles pulling out



A vehicle driving ahead of you is only detected when it is fully in your driving lane.

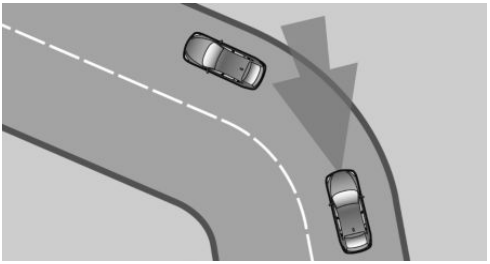
If another vehicle suddenly pulls out in front of you, the system might not be able to re-establish the selected distance of its own accord. The same applies when you are driving significantly faster than the vehicle in front of you, for example when you are rapidly approaching a lorry. If a vehicle is clearly detected in front of you, the system requires that you intervene by braking, and if necessary by taking evasive action.

Unexpected lane changes



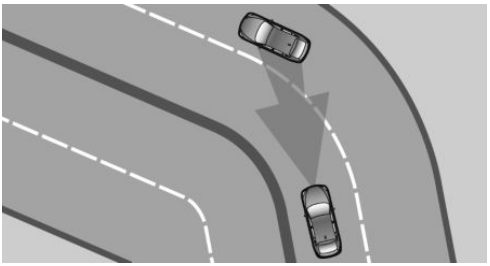
If a vehicle ahead of you unexpectedly changes lane to avoid a stationary vehicle, you must react accordingly, as the system does not respond to stationary vehicles.

Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for cornering, it will be reduced slightly in the corner. However, the system does not detect corners in advance. For this reason, moderate your speed when cornering.

Due to the system's limited detection range, tight bends may lead to vehicles ahead being detected only later or not at all.



When your vehicle is approaching a bend, the angle of the bend may cause the system to respond temporarily to vehicles in the other lane. A possible reduction in the vehicle's speed by the system can be compensated for by briefly accelerating.

When the accelerator pedal is released again, the system will resume control of the vehicle's speed.

Starting

Vehicle cannot drive off automatic in following situations, for example:

- On steep upward inclines.
- Before bumps in the road.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

▷ When towing a heavy trailer.

In such cases, press accelerator pedal.

Weather

In unfavourable weather or light conditions, for example during rain, snow, slush, fog or oncoming glare, detection of vehicles may deteriorate and there may be brief interruptions of already detected vehicles. Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, intervene actively, e.g. by braking, steering or manoeuvring.

Engine power

The desired speed will also be maintained on downward gradients, but may be under-run on upward gradients if engine output is insufficient.

Malfunction

The system cannot be activated if the radar sensor is not correctly aligned, for example following parking damage.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system has failed.

Cruise Control

Principle

This system allows a desired speed to be set using the buttons on the steering wheel. The desired speed is maintained by the system. To do this, the system automatically accelerates and brakes as required.

General

Characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas depending on vehicle setting.

Safety instructions

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable way in all traffic conditions. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

WARNING

Using the system in the following situations can lead to an increased danger of accident:

▷ On stretches with many corners and bends.

▷ In heavy traffic.

▷ If the road is icy, if there is fog, snow, rain or a loose road surface.

Danger of accident or damage to property. Only use the system if it is possible to drive at a constant speed.◀

WARNING

The desired speed can be inadvertently set incorrectly or called up. Danger of accidents. Adapt the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Press the button	Function
	Cruise Control on/off, interrupt, see page 156.
	Call up speed, resume Cruise Control, see page 157.
	Paddle: set speed, see page 156.

Switching the Cruise Control on/off and interrupting

Switching on

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

The speedometer marker is set to the current speed.

Cruise Control can be used.

DSC is switched on if necessary.

Switching off

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

- When activated: press twice.
- When interrupted: press once.

The indicators turn off. The saved desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

 When the system is activated, press the button on the steering wheel.

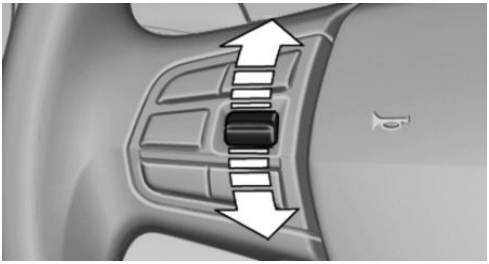
Interrupting automatically

The system interrupts automatically in the following situations:

- If the driver applies the brakes.
- If the clutch is depressed for a few seconds or released with no gear engaged.
- If too high a gear has been engaged for the speed.
- If the selector lever is moved out of selector lever position D.
- If DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- If DSC intervenes.
- If with the driver experience switch SPORT + is activated.

Setting speed

Maintaining speed, saving



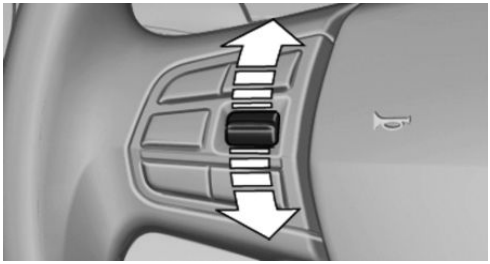
During the interruption, press the rocker switch.

With the system switched on, the driven speed is maintained and saved as the desired speed.

The saved speed is displayed in the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster, see page 157.

DSC is switched on if necessary.

Changing speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly upwards or downwards until the desired speed is set.

With the system active, the speed that is then shown is set and will be achieved on a clear road.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed lightly up to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased by approximately 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the speedometer display.

  The maximum speed which can be set depends on the vehicle.
- Pressing the rocker switch until the resistance point is reached and holding accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without pressing the accelerator pedal.

  The speed is maintained after letting go of the rocker switch. Pressing beyond the resistance point results in greater vehicle acceleration.

Resuming Cruise Control

General

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the saved speed.

Before calling up the saved speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the saved speed is not excessively large.

Otherwise, there may be inadvertent braking or acceleration.

The saved speed value is deleted and can no longer be called up in the following instances:

- When the system is switched off.
- When the ignition is switched off.

Resuming a saved speed

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The saved speed is regained and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator lamp

Depending on the equipment the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster shows whether the system is switched on.

Desired speed and saved speed

- Green mark illuminated: system is active, the mark shows the desired speed.
- Orange/white mark illuminated: system is interrupted, the mark shows the saved speed.
- Marker does not illuminate: the system is inactive.

Brief status display

Selected desired speed.

If no speed is displayed, the conditions required for operation may not be fulfilled at the moment.

Displays on the Head-Up Display

Some information from the system can also be shown on Head-Up Display.

System limits

Engine power

The desired speed will also be maintained on downward gradients, but may be under-run on upward gradients if engine output is insufficient.

Park Distance Control PDC

Principle

PDC supports you with parking. Slowly approaching an object in behind, or with front PDC, in front of, your vehicle is signalled by means of:

- Acoustic signals.
- Visual display.

With respective equipment options: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the sensors of the Park Assistant can also be signalled by the PDC. See flank protection, see page 160.

General

The ultrasonic sensors for measuring the distances are located in the bumpers.

The range is approximately 2 m, 6 ft depending on obstacle and environment.

An acoustic warning is only issued in the following situations:

- At the front sensors and at the two corner sensors at the rear at approximately 60 cm, 24 in distance from the object.
- At the middle sensors at the rear at approximately 1.50 m, 5 ft distance from the object.
- If there is a collision risk.
- With Park Assistant: at the side sensors at approximately 60 cm, 24 in distance from the object.

Safety instructions

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable way in all traffic conditions. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◄

WARNING

If the vehicle is travelling at high speed when PDC is activated, there may be a delayed warning because of physical conditions. Danger of injury or damage to property. Avoid approaching an object at speed. Avoid moving off at speed while PDC is not yet active.◄

Overview

With front PDC: button in vehicle

Park Assistant button

Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasonic sensors of the PDC, for example in the bumpers.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Functional requirements

To ensure correct functionality:

- Do not cover sensors, for example by stickers, bicycle rack.
- Keep sensors clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Automatic switching on

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- If selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.

  The rear-view camera also switches on.
- With Park Assistant equipment: if obstacles behind or in front of the vehicle are detected by PDC and the speed is slower than approximately 4 km/h, approximately 2.5 mph.

The automatic switching on can be switched on and off for detected obstacles using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Parking"
4. "Automatic PDC activation": only with corresponding equipment.
5. "Automatic PDC activation"

   The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

To reduce false alarms, switch off automatic activation of PDC when obstacles are detected if necessary, for example in automatic car washes.

Automatic switching off when moving forwards

The system switches off when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

With front PDC: switching on/off manually

Press the Park Assistant button.

- On: LED is illuminated.
- Off: LED turns off.

The image from the rear-view camera is shown when the reverse gear is engaged and the Park Assistant button is pressed.

Warning

Acoustic signals

An intermittent sound respectively indicates the position of an object as the vehicle approaches it. For instance, if an object is identified to the rear left of the vehicle, the acoustic signal sounds from the rear left loudspeaker.

The shorter the distance to an object becomes, the shorter the intervals become.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approximately 25 cm, 10 in, a continuous tone sounds.

With front PDC: if there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous tone sounds.

The acoustic signal is switched off when selector lever position P is engaged on the Steptronic transmission.

Volume control

It is possible to set the ratio between the volume of the PDC acoustic signal and the volume of the playback.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Sound"
4. "Volume settings"
5. "PDC"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Visual warning

Approaching an object will be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are further away from the vehicle will appear on the Control Display before an acoustic signal is given.

A display is superimposed as soon as PDC is activated.

Recording range of sensors is shown in colours green, yellow and red.

If the reversing camera image is displayed, it is possible to change over to PDC:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2. "Rear View camera"

With respective equipment options: flank protection

Principle

The system warns about obstacles at the side of the vehicle by means of audible signals or a message on the Control Display.

General

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of PDC and Park Assistant.

Display

Side obstacles on the PDC display.

- Coloured markings: warning that obstacles have been detected.
- Grey markings: the area has not been recorded yet.
- No markings: no obstacles have been detected.

Limits of the flank protection

The system only detects stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

The system detects when the own vehicle approaches the stationary obstacle due to its own movement or steering angle.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves. The markings are shown in grey after a certain time when the vehicle is stationary. The area next to the vehicle must be detected again.

Flank protection is not available when the trailer socket is occupied.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◄

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

With a trailer or when the trailer socket is occupied

The rear PDC functions are switched off.

A Check Control message is shown.

Limits of the ultrasound measurement

Detection of objects might not be possible if the limits of the physical ultrasound measurement are exceeded, such as for instance in the following situations:

- With small children and animals.
- With persons with certain clothing, for example a coat.
- With external disruption to the ultrasound, for example by passing vehicles or loud machines.
- If the sensors are dirty, iced-up, damaged or incorrectly adjusted.
- In certain weather conditions, for example high humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- With trailer noses and tow hitches of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- For higher, protruding objects, for example projecting walls or loads.
- For objects with corners and sharp edges.
- For objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With projecting transported load.
- Low objects already indicated, such as kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.

False alarms

Under the following conditions, the system can issue a warning although there is no obstacle in the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- If the sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- If the sensors are covered with snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- On uneven ground, for example speed bumps.
- In large, rectangular buildings with smooth walls, for example underground car parks.
- In washing bays and car washes.
- Due to dense exhaust gases.
- If the cover of the trailer tow hitch is incorrectly seated.
- Due to other ultrasonic sources, for example sweeping machines, steam-jet cleaners or neon lights.

As soon as the disruption by other ultrasound sources is no longer present, the system is fully functional again.

To reduce false alarms, switch off automatic activation of PDC when obstacles are detected if necessary, for example in automatic car washes.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

The recording area of the sensors is shown hatched on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

Surround View

Principle

Surround view contains various camera assistance systems, providing support when parking, manoeuvring and exits and junctions with poor visibility.

- Rear-view camera, see page 162.
- Side view, see page 165.
- Top view, see page 166.

Rear-view camera

Principle

The rear-view camera supports when reversing into a parking space or manoeuvring. To achieve this, the area behind the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.

Safety note

WARNING

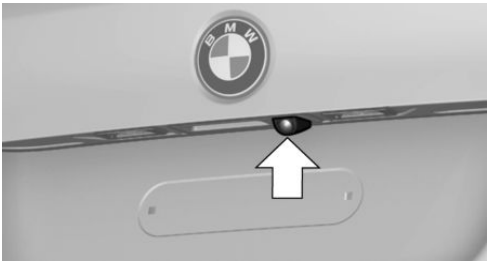
The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the traffic situation. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively in the corresponding situations.◄

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park Assistant button

Camera



The lens of the camera is located in the handle strip of the tailgate.

Dirt can impair the quality of the picture. Clean the camera lens if required.

Switching on/off

Automatic switching on

The system is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.

Automatic switching off when moving forwards

The system switches off when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually

Press the Park Assistant button.

- On: LED is illuminated.
- Off: LED turns off.

PDC is displayed on the Control Display.

The image from the rear-view camera is shown when the reverse gear is engaged and the Park Assistant button is pressed.

Replacing the view via iDrive

With activated PDC or Top View switched on:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.

2. "Rear View camera"

The image from the rear-view camera is shown.

Display on the Control Display

Operating requirements

- The rear-view camera is switched on.
- The tailgate is completely closed.
- Keep the detection area of the camera clear. Projecting loads or carrier systems and trailers that are not connected to a trailer socket can lead to malfunctions.

Activating assistance functions

A number of assistance functions can be active simultaneously.

The zoom function for towing a trailer can only be activated individually.

If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.

- Parking aid lines

  "Parking guidance lines"

  Driving lane and turning circle lines are displayed.
- Obstacle marking

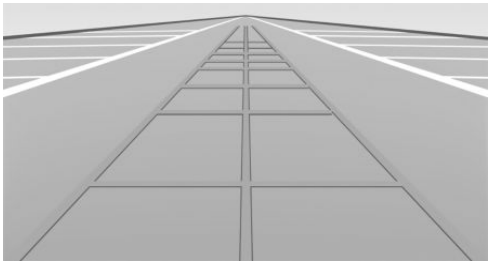
  "Obstacle marking"

  Spatially shaped markings are displayed.
- Trailer tow hitch

  "Towbar zoom"

  The zoom to the trailer tow hitch is displayed.

Driving lane lines

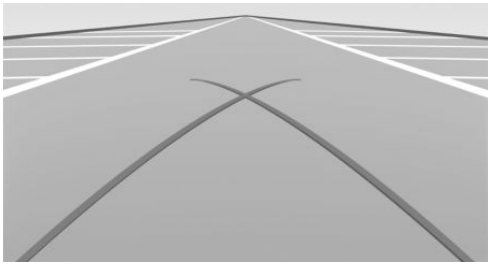


Driving lane lines can appear in the image from the rear-view camera.

The driving lane lines help to estimate the required space when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

The driving lane lines are dependent on the current steering angle and are continuously adapted to steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines

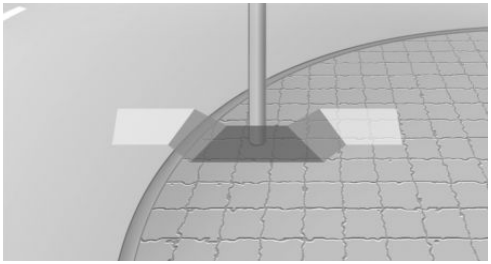


The turning circle lines can only be shown in the image from the rear-view camera together with driving lane lines.

The turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road surface.

When the steering wheel is turned to a certain extent, only a turning circle line is shown.

Obstacle marking



Obstacle markings can be shown in the image from the rear-view camera.

The colour incrementation corresponds to the markings of PDC.

Gesture to trailer tow hitch

To facilitate connecting up a trailer, the picture area around the trailer tow hitch can be zoomed.

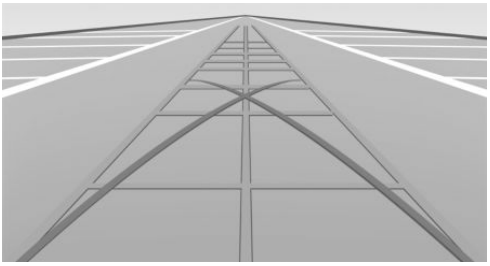
The distance between the trailer and the trailer tow hitch can be estimated with the aid of two static circular segments.

A docking-on line dependent on the steering angle helps to aim at the trailer with your trailer tow hitch.

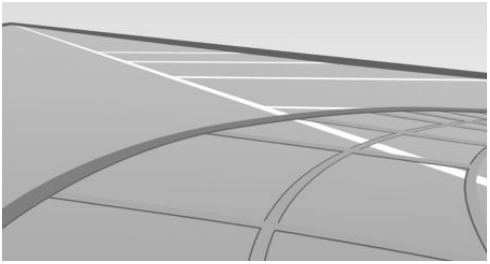
The zoom function can be enabled when the camera is switched on.

Parking with the help of driving lane and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning circle lines are within the limit of the parking space.



2. Turn the steering wheel so that the driving lane line covers the corresponding turning circle line.



Display settings

Brightness

With rear-view camera switched on:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2. ☼ Select the symbol.
3. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

Contrast

With rear-view camera switched on:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2. ◐ Select the symbol.
3. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

System limits

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges cannot be detected by the system.

Assistance functions also consider data from the PDC.

Follow notes in the PDC chapter.

The objects shown on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to objects on the display.

Side View

Principle

Side View provides you with an advance view of crossing traffic at blind exits. Road users hidden by obstacles at the side are only detected very late from the driver's seat. In order to improve the view, two cameras in the front area of the vehicle scan the area to the side. The camera pictures are shown simultaneously on the Control Display.

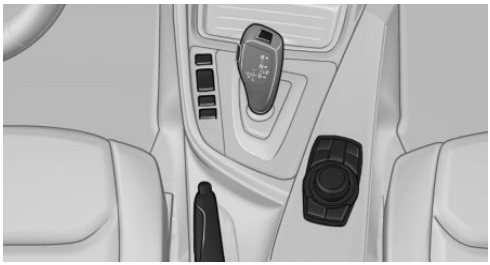
Safety note

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the traffic situation. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively in the corresponding situations.◀

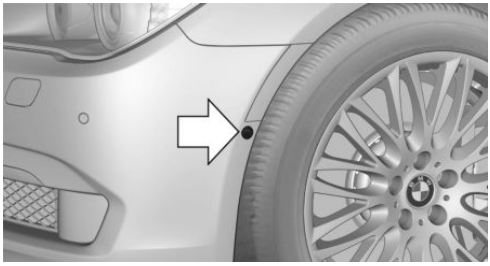
Overview

Button in the vehicle



Side View

Cameras



Two cameras integrated into the bumpers provide detection.

Both camera lenses are located at the side of the bumper.

Dirt can impair the quality of the picture. Clean the camera lenses if required.

Switching on/off

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

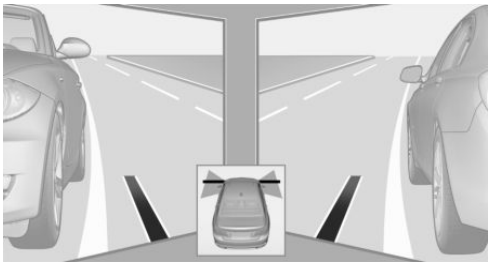
Automatic switching off when moving forwards

The system switches off when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Display

The area to the side is shown on the Control Display.



Artificial lines on the lower screen edge show the position of the vehicle front.

Brightness

With Side View switched on:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2. "Brightness"
3. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

Contrast

With Side View switched on:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2. "Contrast"
3. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

System limits

The pick-up range of the cameras is a maximum of 100 m, 330 ft.

Top View

Principle

Top View assists you with manoeuvring and parking. To achieve this, the area around the door and road is displayed on the Control Display.

General

The two cameras in the exterior mirrors and the rear-view camera are used to view the area around the vehicle.

The range at the sides and rear is at least 2 m, approximately 7 ft.

In this way, obstacles up to the height of the exterior mirror are detected early.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the traffic situation. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively in the corresponding situations.◂

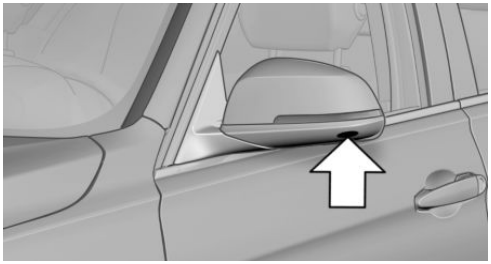
Overview

Button in the vehicle

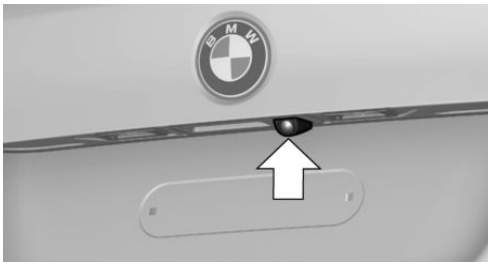
Park Assistant button

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Cameras



Cameras in the bottom of the mirror housings.



Rear-view camera

Dirt can impair the quality of the picture. Clean the camera lenses if required.

Switching on/off

Automatic switching on

The system is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.

The image from the rear-view camera is shown. To switch to the Top View:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2. "Rear View camera"

Automatic switching off when moving forwards

The system switches off when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually

Press the Park Assistant button.

- On: LED is illuminated.
- Off: LED turns off.

Top View is shown.

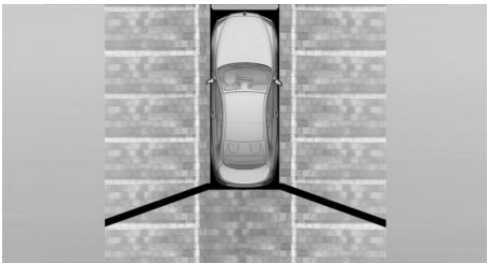
The image from the rear-view camera is shown when the reverse gear is engaged and the Park Assistant button is pressed.

Display

Visual warning

When the vehicle is approaching an object it will be shown on the Control Display.

If there is a short distance to an object at the front, a red bar in front of the vehicle is displayed in the same way as for the PDC display.



The display appears as soon as Top View is activated.

If the reversing camera image is displayed, it is possible to change over to Top View:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2. "Rear View camera"

Brightness

With Top View switched on:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2. Select the symbol.
3. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

Contrast

With Top View switched on:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2. ◐ Select the symbol.
3. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

Displaying the turning circle and driving lane line

- The static red turning circle line indicates the space requirement to the side with full steering angle.
- The variable green driving lane line helps to estimate the actual space requirement to the side.

  The lane line depends on the engaged gear and the current steering angle. The lane line is continuously adjusted by the steering wheel movement.

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2. "Parking guidance lines"

The turning circle and driving lane lines are displayed.

System limits

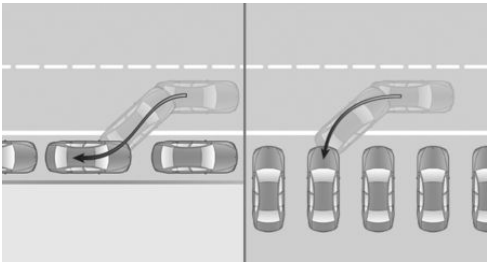
Top View cannot be used in the following situations:

- With a door open.
- With the tailgate open.
- With an exterior mirror folded in.
- In poor light conditions.

In some of these situations a Check Control message is displayed.

Park Assistant

Principle



The system supports you when parking in the following situations:

- When parking sideways parallel to the road.
- When parking in reverse perpendicular to the road.

General

Handling of the Park Assistant is divided into three steps:

- Switching on and activating.
- Parking space search.
- Parking.

The status of the system and necessary action instructions are shown on the Control Display.

Ultrasonic sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The park assistant calculates the ideal parking line and takes over steering during the process of parking.

The Park Assistant uses the sensors of the Park Distance Control, PDC. The safety notes for the Park Distance Control, PDC apply.

Safety instructions

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

way in all traffic conditions. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◄

WARNING

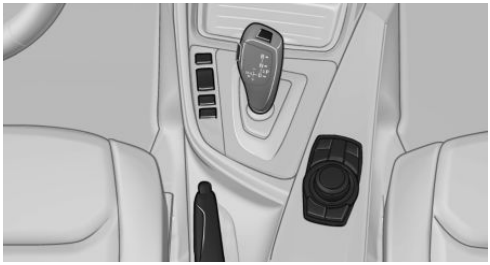
When the trailer tow hitch is used, the Park Assistant could cause damage if its sensors are obstructed. Danger of accident or damage to property. Do not use the Park Assistant when towing a trailer or using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.◄

NOTE

The Park Assistant may steer across curbs or up onto curbs. Danger of damage to property. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◄

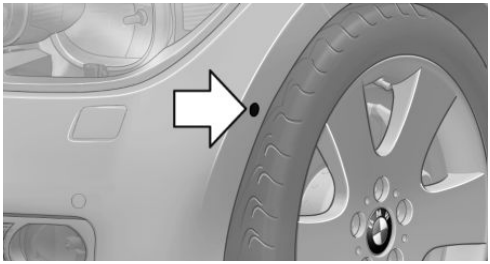
Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park Assistant button

Ultrasonic sensors



The four ultrasonic sensors to measure parking spaces are located on side of vehicle at front and rear.

Functional requirements

Ultrasonic sensors

To ensure correct functionality:

- Do not cover sensors, for example using stickers.
- Keep sensors clean and clear.

To measure parking spaces

- When the vehicle is moving forwards straight up to approximately 35 km/h, approximately 22 mph.
- Maximum distance to the row of parking vehicles: 1.5 m, approximately 5 ft.

Suitable parking space

General:

- Gap behind an object that is at least 0.5 m, approximately 1.7 ft long.
- Gap between two objects, each of which are at least 0.5 m, approximately 1.7 ft long.

Parking parallel to the road:

- Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approximately 0.8 m, approximately 2.6 ft.
- Minimum depth: approximately 1.5 m, approximately 5 ft.

Perpendicular parking:

- Minimum length of gap: own vehicle width plus approximately 0.8 m, approximately 2.6 ft.
- Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

  Drivers must estimate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces themselves. Due to technical limits, the system is only able to gauge the depth of perpendicular parking spaces approximately.

For the process of parking

- Doors and tailgate are closed.
- Parking brake is released.
- You must indicate accordingly when parking into parking spaces on the driver's side.

Switching on and activating

Switching on with the button

Press the Park Assistant button.

LED is illuminated.

The current status of the parking space search is displayed on the Control Display.

Park Assistant is automatically activated.

Switching on with the reverse gear

Engage reverse gear.

The current status of the parking space search is displayed on the Control Display.

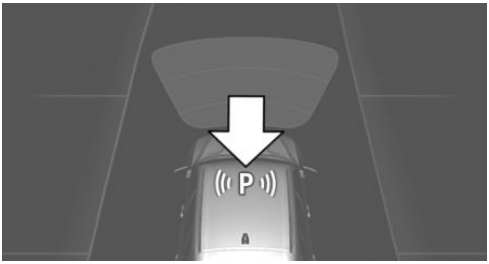
To activate: "Park Assist"

Display on the Control Display

System is activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Grey: system not available. White: system available but not activated.
	System is activated.

Parking space search and status of the system



- Symbol P, see arrow, on the vehicle display. Park Assistant is activated and parking space search is active.
- Suitable parking spaces are shown on the Control Display on the edge of the roadway next to the vehicle symbol. With active Park Assistant, the suitable parking spaces are highlighted in colour.
- When perpendicular or parallel parking spaces are definitely detected, the system automatically sets the appropriate parking method. A selection menu is displayed for parking spaces that are large enough for both parallel and perpendicular parking. In this case, select the desired parking method manually.
-  Parking process active. Steering has been taken over.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

▷ The parking space search is always active with slow straight forward driving, even with deactivated system. With deactivated system, the displays on the Control Display are shown grey.

Parking with the Park Assistant

Driving into a parking space

1.  Press the Park Assistant button or engage reverse gear to switch on the Park Assistant, see page 170. Activate Park Assistant if necessary.

   Park Assistant is activated.
2. Drive past the line of parked vehicles at a speed up to approximately 35 km/h, approximately 22 mph and at a distance of maximum 1.5 m, approximately 5 ft.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are shown on the Control Display, see page 170.
3. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   To achieve an optimum parking position, wait for the automatic steering process after changing gear at standstill.

   The end of the parking process is displayed on the Control Display.
4. Straighten up the parking position, if applicable.

Cancelling manually

You can cancel the Park Assistant at any time:

▷  Press the Park Assistant button.

▷ "Park Assist" Select the symbol on the Control Display.

Cancelling automatically

The system automatically cancels in the following situations:

▷ When holding firmly onto the steering wheel or even if steering is done.

▷ When selecting gear, which does not correspond to the information on the Control Display.

▷ At speeds over approximately 10 km/h, approximately 6 mph.

▷ Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.

▷ Any obstacles difficult to get over, for example kerbs.

▷ With obstacles that suddenly arise.

▷ If the Park Distance Control PDC shows gaps are too small.

▷ When a maximum number of parking attempts or parking time is exceeded.

▷ When DSC is deactivated.

▷ When changing to other functions on the Control Display.

A Check Control message is shown.

Continuing

You can continue a cancelled parking process, if applicable.

To do this, reactivate the Park Assistant, see page 170, and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off as follows:

▷  Press the Park Assistant button.

▷ Switch the ignition off.

System limits

Safety note

 WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with

the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◀

No parking support

The Park Assistant does not support in the following situations:

- On sharp bends.
- When towing a trailer.
- With deactivated DSC.
- In angled parking spaces.

Restrictions of the function

The function can be restricted, for example in the following situations:

- When on uneven road surfaces, for example gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep upward or downward gradients.
- If leaves have collected or snow has drifted or been piled up in the parking space.
- At ditches or sudden drops, for example a quayside.

Limits of the ultrasound measurement

Detection of objects might not be possible if the limits of the physical ultrasound measurement are exceeded, such as for instance in the following situations:

- With small children and animals.
- With persons with certain clothing, for example a coat.
- With external disruption to the ultrasound, for example by passing vehicles or loud machines.
- If the sensors are dirty, iced-up, damaged or incorrectly adjusted.
- In certain weather conditions, for example high humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- With trailer noses and tow hitches of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- For higher, protruding objects, for example projecting walls or loads.
- For objects with corners and sharp edges.
- For objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With projecting transported load.
- Low objects already indicated, such as kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.

In some cases, parking spaces may be detected that are not suitable or suitable parking spaces may not be detected.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

The Park Assistant has failed. Have the system checked.

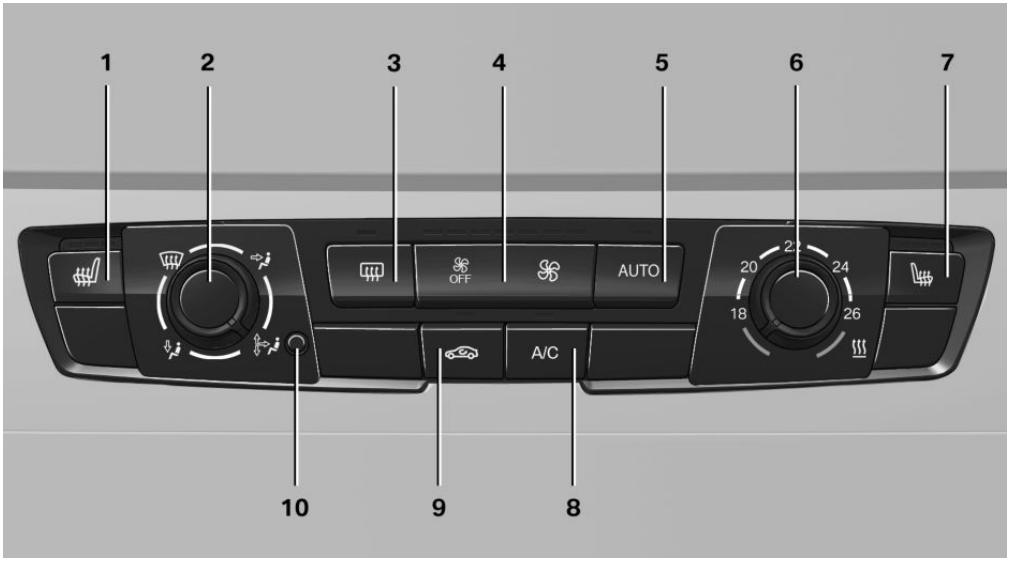
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Climate

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Automatic air conditioning



1 Seat heating, left 63
2 Air distribution
3 Rear window heating
4 Air flow
5 AUTO program
6 Temperature
7 Seat heating, right 63
8 Cooling function
9 Recirculated-air mode
10 Interior-temperature sensor

Air conditioning functions in detail

Switching system on/off

Switching on

Press any key, except

- Rear window heating.
- Seat heating.

Switching off

In the lowest setting, press the left of the button.

Temperature

Turn the wheel to select the desired temperature.

The automatic air conditioning sets this temperature as quickly as possible, using higher cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning will otherwise not have sufficient time to establish the temperature selected.

Cooling function

Interior air is cooled and dried, then reheated to suit the temperature setting.

The interior can only be cooled when the engine is running.

Press the button.

The cooling function is switched on or off.

Depending on weather conditions, the windscreen and side windows may mist over for a short time when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO program.

When using the automatic air conditioning, condensation, see page 195, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

AUTO program

Press the button.

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are automatically regulated.

Depending on the selected temperature and external influences, the air is directed towards the windscreen, side windows, and upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, see page 174, is switched on automatically in the AUTO program.

Recirculated-air mode

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the supply to the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The air inside the vehicle is then recirculated.

Press button repeatedly to call up an operating mode:

- LED off: ambient air is constantly entering the car.
- LED on, recirculated-air mode: the ambient air supply is permanently shut off.

The recirculated-air mode automatically switches off after a given time depending on the ambient conditions, to avoid condensation.

Continuous recirculated-air mode deteriorates the air quality in the interior and condensation on the windows increases.

In the event of condensation, switch off the recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow if necessary.

Adjusting the air flow manually

Press left or right side button: reduce or increase air flow.

The air flow of the air conditioning system is reduced as necessary to save the battery.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Turn the wheel to select the desired program or the desired intermediate setting.

- Window glass.
- Upper body area.
- Windows, upper body area and footwell.
- Footwell.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Direct air distribution to windows, increase quantity of air and temperature then switch on with cooling function as needed.

Rear window heating

Press the button.

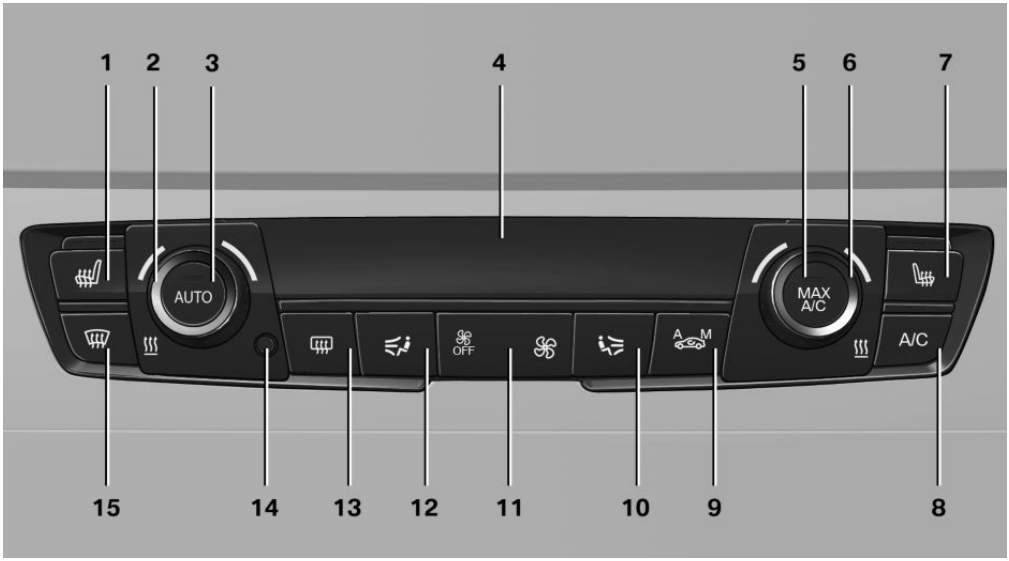
The rear window heating is switched off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter

In outside and recirculated-air mode, the microfilter filters dust and pollen from the air.

This filter should be changed during maintenance on your vehicle, see page 241.

Automatic air conditioning with extended functionality



1 Seat heating, left 63
2 Temperature, left
3 AUTO program
4 Display
5 Maximum cooling effect
6 Temperature, right
7 Seat heating, right 63
8 Cooling function
9 AUC/recirculated-air mode
10 Air distribution, right
11 Air flow, AUTO intensity
12 Air distribution, left
13 Rear window heating
14 Interior temperature sensor — never cover
15 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Air conditioning functions in detail

Switching system on/off

Switching on

Press any key, except

- Rear window heating.
- Seat heating.

Switching off

In the lowest setting, press the left of the button.

Temperature

Turn the wheel to select the desired temperature.

The automatic air conditioning sets this temperature as quickly as possible, using higher cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning will otherwise not have sufficient time to establish the temperature selected.

Cooling function

Interior air is cooled and dried, then reheated to suit the temperature setting.

The interior can only be cooled when the engine is running.

Press the button.

The cooling function is switched on or off.

Depending on weather conditions, the windscreen and side windows may mist over for a short time when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO program.

When using the automatic air conditioning, condensation, see page 195, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling effect

Press the button.

System is set to lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

The air flows from the side nozzles for the upper body area. Therefore open the side nozzles.

The function is available above an outside temperature of approximately 0 °C/32 °F And with the engine running.

The air flow can be adapted when the program is active.

AUTO program

Press the button.

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are automatically regulated.

Depending on the selected temperature, intensity AUTO program and external influences, the air is directed towards the windscreen, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, see page 176, is switched on automatically in the AUTO program.

A condensation sensor also controls the program so that condensation is avoided as much as possible.

Intensity of AUTO program

When AUTO program is switched on, automatic control of the intensity can be changed.

Press left or right side button: reduce or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

Automatic air recirculation control, AUC/recirculated-air mode

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the supply to the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The air inside the vehicle is then recirculated.

Press button repeatedly to call up an operating mode:

- LEDs off: ambient air is constantly entering the car.
- Left-hand LED on, AUC mode: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts it out automatically.
- Right-hand LED on, recirculated-air mode: the ambient air supply is permanently shut off.

The recirculated-air mode automatically switches off at low outside temperatures after a given time, to avoid condensation.

Continuous recirculated-air mode deteriorates the air quality in the interior and condensation on the windows increases.

If there is condensation on the window, switch off recirculated-air mode and press the AUTO button to use the condensation sensor. Ensure that air can flow towards the windscreen.

Adjusting the air flow manually

To be able to adjust the air flow manually, first switch off the AUTO program.

Press left or right side button: reduce or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

In order to protect the battery the air flow rate of the automatic air conditioning is reduced, if necessary.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body area.
- Upper body area and footwell.
- Footwell.
- Windows and footwell: only on the driver's side.
- Windows, upper body area and footwell: only on the driver's side.

If there is condensation on the window, press the AUTO button in order to use the condensation sensor.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Press the button.

This removes ice and condensation quickly from the windscreen and the front side windows.

To do this, point the side nozzles at the side windows if necessary.

The air flow can be adapted when the program is active.

If there is condensation on the window, switch on the cooling function as well or press the AUTO button to use the condensation sensor.

Rear window heating

Press the button.

The rear window heating is switched off automatically after a certain period of time.

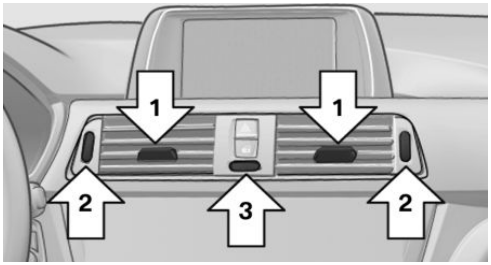
Micro/activated charcoal filter

In outside and recirculated-air mode, the microfilter/activated carbon filter filters dust, pollen and harmful gases from the air.

This filter should be changed during maintenance, see page 241, on the vehicle.

Ventilation

Ventilation at front



- Lever to change the direction in which air flows, arrows 1.
- Knurled wheels to open and close the air outlets continuously, arrow 2.
- Knurled wheel for varying ventilation temperature in upper body area, arrow 3.

  Towards blue: cooler

  Towards red: warmer.

  Set interior temperature for driver and front seat passenger is not changed by this.

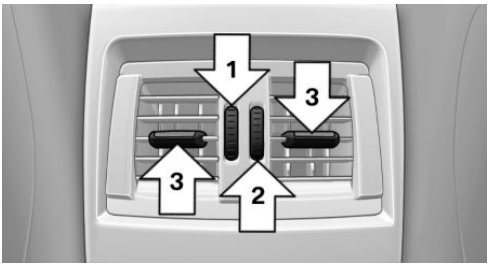
Setting the ventilation

- Ventilation for cooling:

  Adjust the side nozzles so that air is directed towards you, for example if the vehicle's interior has become hot.
- Draught-free ventilation:

  Adjust the side nozzles so that the air flows past you.

Ventilation in rear passenger compartment



- Knurled wheel to open and close the air outlets continuously, arrow 1.
- Knurled wheel for varying the ventilation temperature, arrow 2.

  Towards blue: cooler

  Towards red: warmer.

  This does not change the set interior temperature.
- Lever to change the direction in which air flows, arrow 3.

Independent ventilation

Principle

The independent ventilation system ventilates the passenger compartment and lowers its temperature under some circumstances.

The system can be switched on and off at any ambient temperature either directly or via two preselected switch-on times. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Open the ventilation vents so the air can flow out.

Switching on/off directly

On the Control Display:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"

3. If necessary, "Climate comfort"
4. "Activate auxiliary ventilation now"

❀ symbol on automatic air conditioning flashes when system is switched on.

Preselecting the switch-on time

On the Control Display:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary ventilation"
5. Select required switch-on time.
6. Set desired time.

Activating the switch-on time

On the Control Display:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate comfort"
4. "For start time at:"

   Activate required switch-on time.

❀ Symbol on the automatic air conditioning system is illuminated when the switch-on time is active.

❀ Symbol on the automatic air conditioning system flashes when the system has cut in.

The system switches on within the next 24 hours only. Afterwards, it must be reactivated.

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Sun visor

Glare protection

Fold the sun visor downwards or upwards.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is situated in the sun visor behind a cover. The mirror light switches on when the cover is opened.

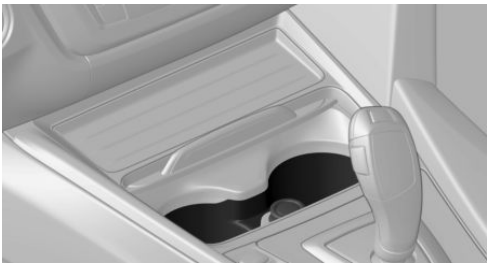
Ashtray/lighter

Ashtray

Opening

Push the cover forward.

Inserting



The ashtray can be inserted into both cupholders.

Emptying

Lift out the insert.

Lighter

WARNING

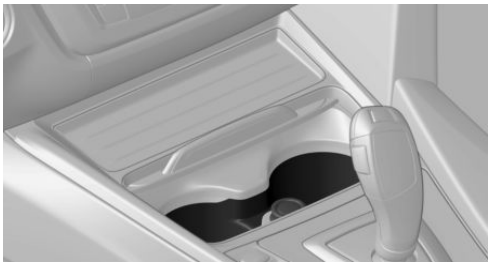
Contacting the hot heating element or the hot fitting of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can catch fire if the lighter falls down or is held against corresponding objects. Danger of fire and injury. Grip the cigarette lighter by the handle. Make sure that children cannot use the lighter and burn themselves, for example by taking the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle.◄

NOTE

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. Danger of damage to property. After using the socket, put the lighter or socket cover back on.◄

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Push the cover forward.



The lighter is located between the cupholders.

Press in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed when it pops back out.

Power sockets

General

Cigarette lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical devices when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watt at 12 Volt.

To avoid damage to the socket, do not insert an incompatible plug.

Safety instructions

NOTE

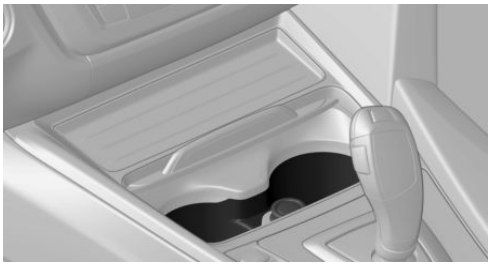
Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can operate with high voltages and high currents, which can overload or damage the 12 volt on-board network. Danger of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-starting connections in the engine compartment.◀

NOTE

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. Danger of damage to property. After using the socket, put the lighter or socket cover back on.◀

Front centre console

Push the cover forward.

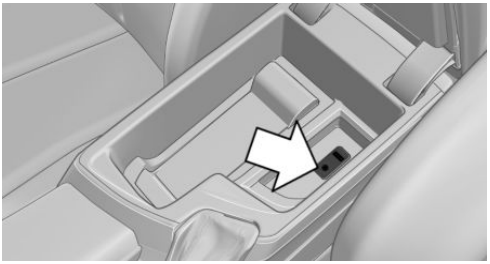


Remove the socket cover or lighter.

Rear centre console

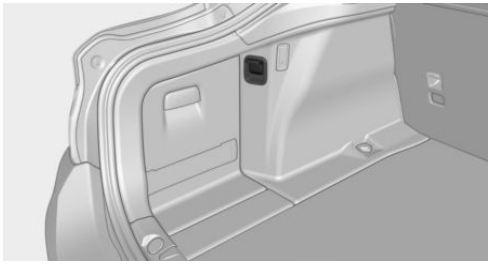
Remove the cover.

In the centre armrest



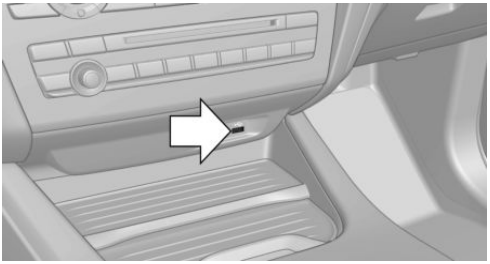
A USB interface is in the centre armrest.

Inside the boot



Socket is on the left in the boot.

In the centre console



A USB interface is in the centre console.

USB interface

General

Comply with the notes on connecting mobile devices to the USB interface in section USB connections, see page 32.

Boot

Boot cover

Safety note

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, can be thrown through the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the interior.◄

General

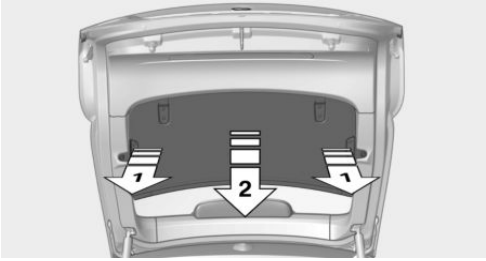
The boot cover is in two parts.

For stowing bulky luggage, this can be removed.

Removing

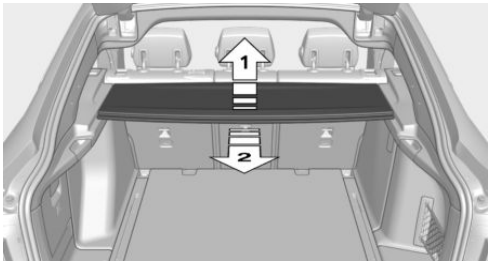
Boot cover in rear window

1. Push the boot cover back with both hands on the outer sides, arrows 1, to remove it from the catches.



2. Pull boot cover down, arrow 2, and remove.

Boot cover in the boot



Push the boot cover up, arrow 1, until it unlatches and then push forwards, arrow 2.

Inserting

To use, follow the reverse sequence. In each case, the boot covers must click into the brackets.

Expanding the boot

General

The boot can be enlarged by folding down the rear backrest.

The rear backrest is split 60–40.

With equipment with load-through system: The rear backrests is separated in the ratio 40–20–40. Each side or the centre section can be folded down separately.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Risk of trapping when folding down the rear backrest. Danger of injury or damage to property. Before folding down, make sure that the movement area of the rear backrest and the head restraint is clear.◄

WARNING

If the seat adjustment or child seat installation is incorrect, the stability of the child restraint system will be restricted or rendered ineffective. Danger of injury or life. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly positioned against the backrest. In all relevant backrests, adapt the backrest angle if possible and set the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.◄

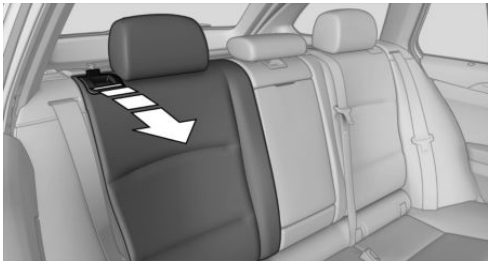
WARNING

Unsecured cargo can be thrown into the interior due to an unlocked backrest, for example in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvres. Danger of injury. Make sure that the locking mechanism engages when folding back the backrest.◄

WARNING

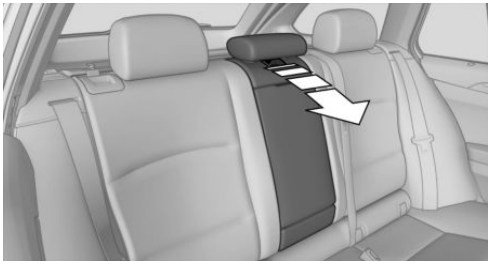
If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not ensured. Danger of injury or life. Lock the wider rear backrest when using the middle seat belt.◄

Folding down sides



Reach into the recess and pull forward.

Folding down centre section



Reach into the recess and pull forward.

Storage compartments

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, can be thrown through the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the interior.◄

NOTE

Anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. Danger of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip mats.◄

Storage options

The following storage options are located in the interior:

- Glove box on the passenger side, see page 185.
- Glove box on the driver's side, see page 186.
- Front compartment, in front of cupholders, see page 186.
- Storage compartment in the front centre armrest, see page 186.
- Pockets in the doors, see page 186.
- Nets on the backrests of the front seats.
- Storage compartment in the centre console in the back, see page 187.

Glove box

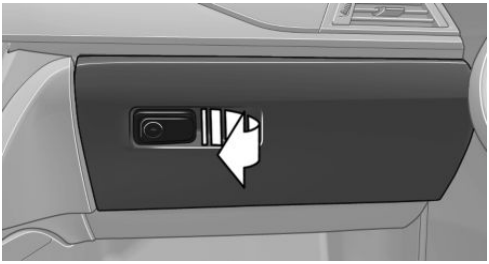
Front passenger's side

Safety note

WARNING

The glove box projects into the interior when it is opened. Objects in the glove box can be thrown into the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury. Immediately close the glove box after using it.◄

Opening



Pull the handle.

The lighting in the glove box comes on.

Closing

Fold lid down.

Locking

The glove box can be locked with an integrated key. This means it is not possible to access the glove box.

After the glove box has been locked, the remote control without the integrated key can be handed over, for example, at a hotel.

Driver's side

Safety note

WARNING

The glove box projects into the interior when it is opened. Objects in the glove box can be thrown into the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury. Immediately close the glove box after using it.◄

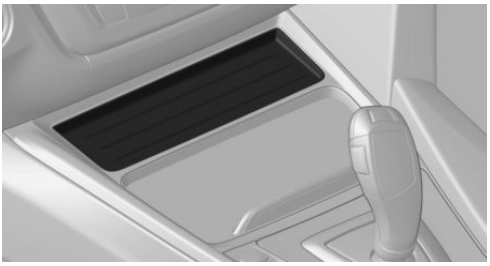
Opening

Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold lid down.

Front compartment



There is a storage compartment in the centre console.

Pockets in the doors

WARNING

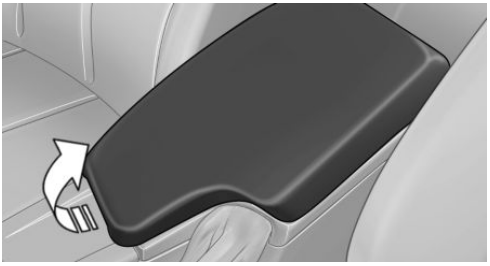
Fragile objects, for example glass bottles, can break in the event of an accident. Shards can spread throughout the interior. Danger of injury. Do not store any fragile objects in the interior.◄

Centre armrest

Front

There is a storage compartment in the centre armrest between the front seats.

Opening



Fold the centre armrest upwards.

Sliding

Centre armrest can be slid in the longitudinal direction. It engages into the end positions.

Connection for external audio device

An external audio device, for example an MP3 player, can be connected through the AUX-IN port or the USB audio interface in the centre armrest.

Storage compartment in the rear

There is a storage compartment in the centre console in the rear.

Cupholder

Safety note

WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cupholder and hot drinks can damage the cupholders, and increase the risk of injury in an accident. Danger of injury or damage to property. Use light, lockable containers that are shatterproof. Do not transport hot drinks. Do not force objects into the cupholder.◄

Front

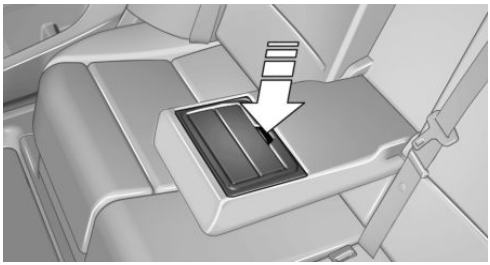
There are two cupholders in the centre console.

To open: push the cover forward.

To close: push the cover backwards.

Rear

In the centre armrest.



Pull centre armrest forward with the loop.

To open: press the button.

To close: push both covers back in one after the other.

NOTE

If the cupholder is open, the centre armrest cannot be folded back. Danger of damage to property. Push back the covers before folding up the centre armrest.◄

Coat hooks

Safety instructions

WARNING

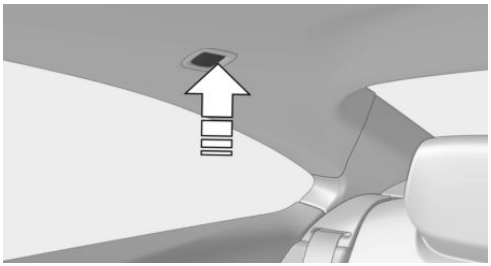
Items of clothing on the coat hooks can impair visibility when driving. Danger of accidents. Hang items of clothing from the hooks so they do not obstruct visibility when driving.◄

WARNING

Incorrect use of the coat hooks can represent a danger, for example if objects fly around in the case of braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury and damage to

property. Only hang light objects, for example items of clothing, on the coat hooks.◄

General



To open, press top edge.

Storage compartments in the boot

Storage compartment

There is a storage compartment on the left.

Net

Smaller objects can be stowed in the net on the right-hand side.

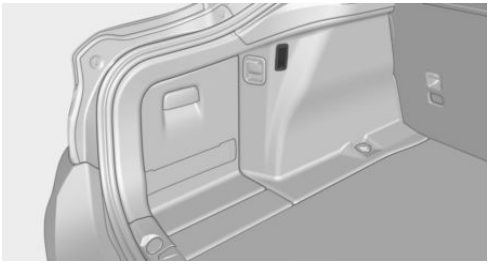
Bag holders

Note

WARNING

Incorrect use of the holders can represent a danger, for example if objects fly around in the case of braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury and damage to property. Only hang light objects, for example shopping bags, on the holders. Only transport heavy luggage with suitable means of securing in the boot.◄

Overview



In the boot there is a bag holder on the left-hand side.

Tensioning strap

There is a tensioning strap on the left-hand trim panel for securing small objects.

Lashing eyes in the boot

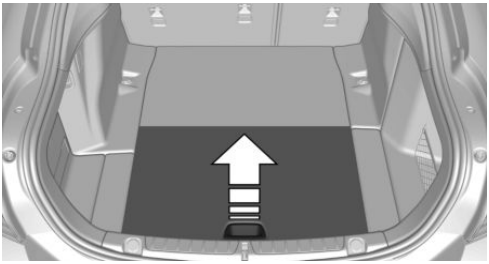
For securing the load, see page 196, four lashing eyes are in the boot.

Floor net

The floor net can also be used for securing the load, see page 196.

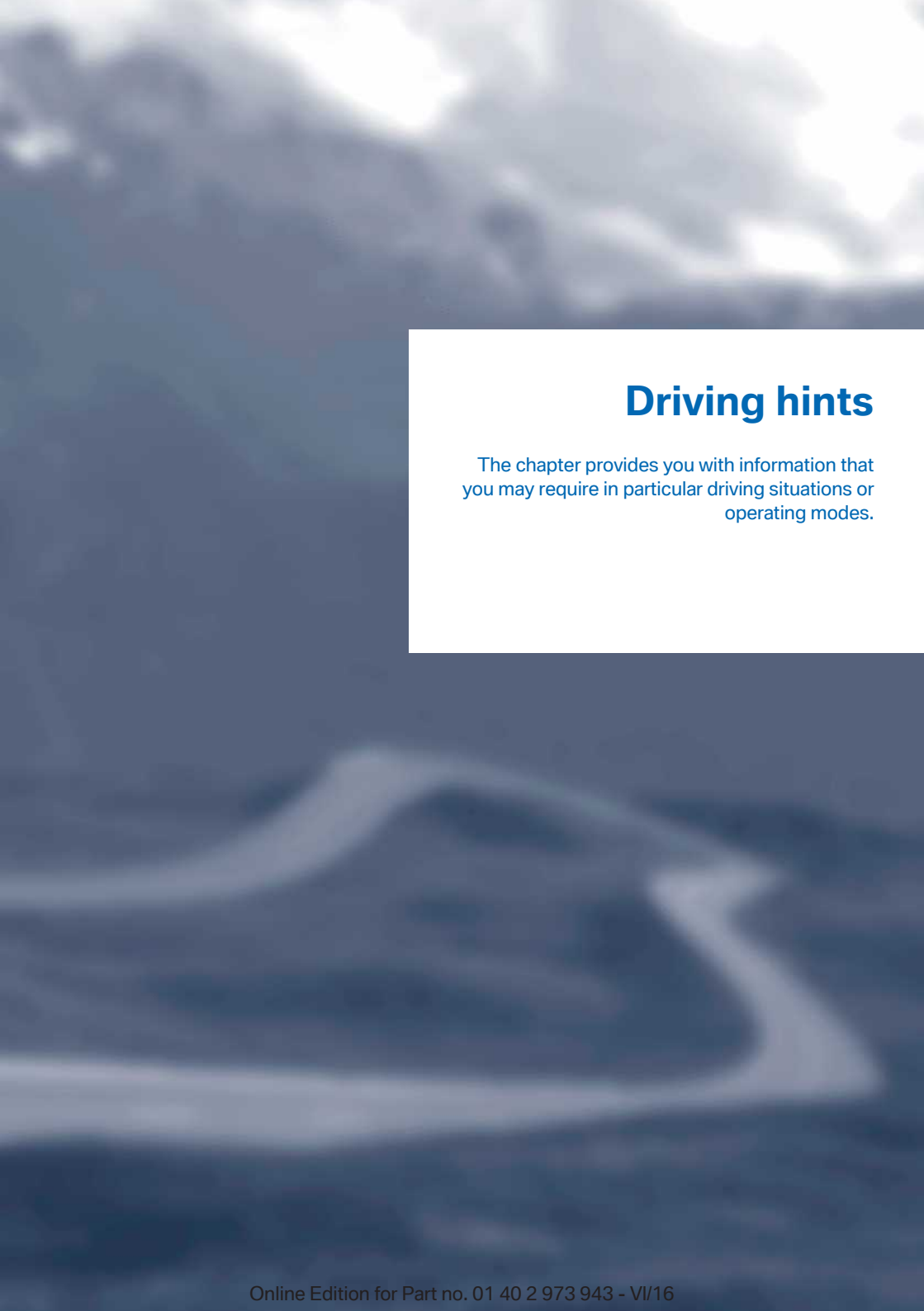
Storage compartment under the boot floor

For the storage compartment under the boot floor, do not exceed a maximum permitted load of 20 kg, approximately 44 lb.



Fold up boot floor, arrow.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16



Driving hints

The chapter provides you with information that you may require in particular driving situations or operating modes.

Driving precautions

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Running in

General

Moving parts need a certain time to achieve maximum operating efficiency as a unit.

The following notes help to achieve maximum lifetime and efficiency of the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control when running in.

Safety note

WARNING

New parts and components can cause safety and Driver Assistance Systems to respond with a delay. Danger of accidents. After new parts have been installed, or if the vehicle is new, drive moderately and intervene at an early stage if necessary. Comply with running-in procedures for the corresponding parts and components.◄

Engine, gearbox and differential

Up to 2000 km, 1200 miles

Do not exceed the maximum engine revs and speed:

- With petrol engines, 4500 rpm and 160 km/h, approximately 100 mph.
- With diesel engines, 3500 rpm and 150 km/h, approximately 93 mph.

In principle, avoid full load or kick-down.

From 2000 km, 1200 miles onwards

Engine and road speeds can be gradually increased.

Tyres

New tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately, for production reasons.

During the first 300 km, 200 miles, drive moderately.

Brake system

Brake discs and pads only achieve a favourable wear and contact pattern after approximately 500 km, approximately 300 miles. Drive moderately during this running-in period.

Clutch

The clutch only begins to function optimally at approximately 500 km, approximately 300 miles. Engage the clutch gently during this running-in period.

After fitting new parts

The same running-in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

General driving information

Closing the tailgate

WARNING

An open tailgate projects beyond the vehicle, and in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvres, it can endanger ve-

hicle occupants and other road users, or damage the vehicle. There is also the danger of exhaust fumes entering the interior of the vehicle. Danger of injury or damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.◄

If there is no alternative to driving with the tailgate open:

- ▷ Close all the windows and the Glass Roof.
- ▷ Turn up the blower to a high output level.
- ▷ Maintain moderate speed.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

During driving, high temperatures can be generated under the body, for example because of the exhaust system. If flammable materials, for example leaves of grass, come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can catch fire. Danger of injury or damage to property. Never remove the heat shields fitted here, or apply underseal to them. Make sure that when driving, idling or parking, no flammable materials can come into contact with hot vehicle parts. Do not touch the hot exhaust system.◄

Diesel particle filter

The diesel particle filter collects soot particles and burns them periodically at high temperatures.

When cleaning for a few minutes, the following may occur:

- ▷ Engine temporarily runs a bit roughly.
- ▷ Noise and slight development of smoke from the exhaust shortly after shutting off the engine.
- ▷ The usual power output development requires a slightly higher engine speed.

Radio signals

WARNING

Certain vehicle functions may be affected by interference from high-frequency radio signals. Such signals are output from a series of transmission systems, for example, from air traffic beacons or relay stations for mobile telecommunications.

We recommend you consult a Service Partner should you experience any difficulties in this regard.◄

Mobile communication equipment

WARNING

The vehicle's electronics and mobile radio devices can interfere. The transmission operation of mobile radio devices generates radiation. Danger of injury or damage to property. If possible, only use mobile radio devices, for example mobile telephones, in the interior with direct connection to an external antenna to exclude mutual interference and to dissipate the radiation from the vehicle's interior.◄

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tyres and the road.

This situation, known as aquaplaning, means that the tyre can actually lose contact completely with the road surface and the vehicle can neither be steered nor the brakes properly applied.

Wading

NOTE

Driving through excessively deep water too fast can result in water entering the engine compartment, electrical system or transmission. Danger of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum specified water depth and maximum fording speed.◄

Comply with the following when driving through water:

- Only drive through calm water.
- Only drive through water up to a depth of max. 25 cm, approximately 9.8 in.
- Drive through water at no faster than 5 km/h, approximately 3 mph.

Safe braking

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as standard.

Perform full braking in situations that require it.

The vehicle can be steered. Any obstacles can be avoided with steering wheel movements that are as calm as possible.

A pulsing of the brake pedal and hydraulic regulating sounds indicate that ABS is regulating.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can cause functional noise. However, this has no effect on the efficiency and operational safety of the brakes.

Objects in the range of movement of the pedals and in the footwell

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel, or block a pedal that has been pressed. Danger of accidents. Stow items in the vehicle so that they are secure and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are appropriate for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use any loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely reattached after having been removed, for example for cleaning.◄

Wet roads

In damp weather, if road grit has been spread or there is heavy rain, apply the brakes lightly every few kilometres/miles.

In doing so, do not obstruct other road users.

The heat resulting from braking dries the brake discs and brake pads, as well as protecting them against corrosion.

The braking force will be available immediately if needed.

Downhill gradients

WARNING

Even slight, continuous pressure on the brake pedal can cause overheating, brake pad wear or even brake system failure. Danger of accidents. Avoid excessive loads on the brake.◄

WARNING

When idling or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions are restricted or no longer available, for example the braking effect of the engine or power assistance for the braking force and steering. Danger of accidents. Do not drive at idle speed or with the engine switched off.◄

When driving on long or steep downhill stretches, use the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise the brake system can overheat and braking action is reduced.

The braking effect can be additionally increased by manually shifting down, even into first gear, if applicable.

Corrosion of the brake disc

Corrosion of the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads increase with the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents.

Should corrosion form on the brake discs, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that generally cannot be corrected.

Condensation when vehicle is parked

When using the automatic air conditioning, condensation develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Driving on a racing track

The higher mechanical and thermal loads involved in driving on racing tracks lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. The vehicle is not designed for use in motorsport competitions.

Before driving on a racing track, have the vehicle checked at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Loads

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Safety instructions

WARNING

A high gross vehicle weight can cause the tyres to overheat, causing damage and a sudden loss of tyre pressure. Danger of accidents. Comply with the permitted load index of the tyre, and do not exceed the permitted gross vehicle weight.◄

WARNING

If the permitted total weight and the permitted axle loads are exceeded, operational safety of the vehicle is not ensured anymore. Danger of accidents. Do not exceed the permitted total weight and permitted axle loads.◄

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, can be thrown through the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the interior.◄

WARNING

Incorrectly stowed objects can slip or be thrown into the interior, for example in an accident, during braking or evasive manoeuvres. Vehicle occupants could be hit and injured. Danger of injury. Stow and secure the objects and the load correctly.◄

NOTE

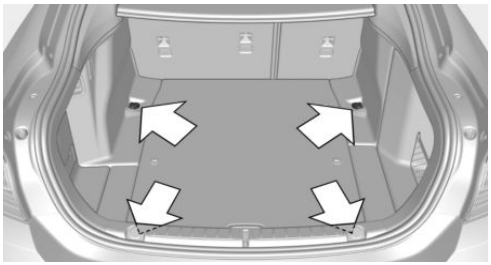
Liquids in the boot can cause damage. Danger of damage to property. Make sure that no liquids leak out in the boot.◄

Stowing and securing transported load

- Wrap protective material around sharp corners and edges of the load.
- Heavy transported load: stow as far forward and as low down as possible, ideally directly behind the rear backrests.
- Very heavy transported load: with no passengers on the back seat, insert both outer seat belts into the respective opposite buckles.
- Fully fold down the rear-seat backrest if the load is to be stowed accordingly.
- Do not stack storage goods above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Smaller and lighter transported load: with tensioning straps, to secure the floor net or other suitable straps.
- Larger and heavy transported load: secure with lashing straps.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Lashing eyes in the boot

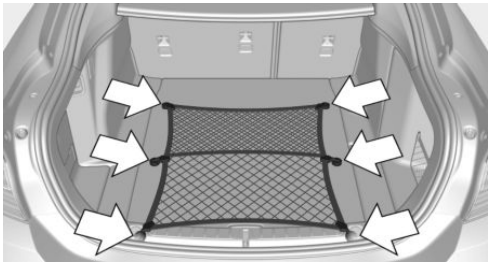


For securing the load four lashing eyes are in the boot.

Equipment for securing the transported load, such as lashing straps, tensioning straps or luggage nets, must be secured to the lashing eyes in the boot.

Floor net

The floor net can also be used for securing the load.



Hang the floor net on the eyes in the boot floor.

Roof rack

General

Roof racks are available as special equipment.

Safety note

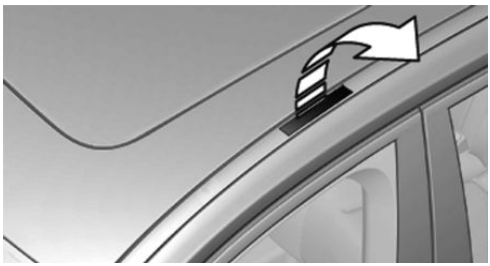
WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with a roof rack, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. Danger of accident or damage to property. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with a roof load.◄

Fastening

Follow fitting instruction of the roof rack.

Roof strip with flaps



The mounting points are located on the roof strip above the doors.

Fold the cover outwards.

Loads

A loaded roof rack alters the vehicle's road behaviour and steering response by shifting its centre of gravity.

When loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- Do not exceed permitted roof and axle load as well as the permitted gross weight.
- Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the Glass Roof.
- Distribute the roof load evenly.
- The roof load must not be spread over a large area.

- Place heavy items of luggage at the bottom.
- Securely fasten roof rack, for example with tensioning straps.
- Do not allow objects to protrude into the swing range of the tailgate.
- Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration, braking or cornering.

Towing a trailer

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The permitted trailer loads, axle loads, trailer nose weights and gross vehicle weight rating are specified in the technical data.

Possibilities to increase are known to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The vehicle is equipped with reinforced springs on the rear axle and, depending on the type, with a more powerful cooling system.

For Australia/New Zealand: note

Towing

Australian standard AS 4177.1-2004 Caravan and light trailer towing components – towbars and towing brackets contains the following statement, which is hereby accepted by the BMW Group Australia: FOR TOWING ONLY. The trailer tow hitch supplied with your BMW vehicle should only be used for towing and not in connection with any kind of transport device attached to the trailer tow hitch, i.e. bicycle carriers or similar.

As all BMW Group towbar assemblies are designed, tested and approved as a single unit, the practice of modifying or replacing the BMW supplied towball mount assembly is not approved. Use only the genuine BMW towball mount assembly.

BMW Group Australia does not recommend or support the installation and use of a Weight Distribution Hitch or Load Levelling Device on any BMW Group vehicles. The use of such devices may affect the vehicle's warranty status.

We recommend you consult your Authorised BMW Dealer for any further advice or clarification.

Before a journey

Trailer nose weight

If possible, the trailer should not have a trailer nose weight less than the minimum of 25 kg, approximately 55 lb, and also try to use the maximum trailer nose weight to the full extent.

The weight of the trailer tow hitch and the nose weight reduce the maximum load of the towing vehicle. The nose weight increases the vehicle weight. The total permitted weight of the towing vehicle must not be exceeded.

Loads

Distribute the load as evenly as possible over the loadbed.

Stow the load as low as possible and as close as possible to the trailer axle. A low centre of trailer gravity makes the vehicle combination much more stable and safe to drive.

The permitted total weight of the trailer and the permitted trailer load of the vehicle must not be exceeded. The smaller value is the limit which should be adhered to.

Tyre pressures

Check the vehicle's and the trailer's tyre pressures carefully.

On the vehicle, the tyre inflation pressure, see page 221, for higher loads applies.

For the trailer, the regulations of the manufacturer apply.

Runflat indicator

Reinitialise the runflat indicator after a trailer has been attached or detached or the inflation pressure has been corrected.

Tyre Pressure Monitor

Reinitialise the Tyre Pressure Monitor after a trailer has been attached or detached or the inflation pressure has been corrected.

Exterior mirrors

Two exterior mirrors which bring both rear corners of the trailer into your field of view are required by law. Mirrors of this type are available as special equipment from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Power consumption

Before beginning your journey, check the function of the trailer rear lights.

The power output of the trailer's rear lights must not exceed the following values:

- Turn indicators: 42 watt per side.
- Tail lights: 50 watt per side.
- Brake lights: 84 watt total.
- Rear fog lights: 42 watt total.
- Reversing lights: 42 watt total.

Keep the switch-on times of the current consumer units in the caravan mode short in order not to place an excessive load on the vehicle battery.

Towing a trailer

Safety instructions

WARNING

Speeds in excess of approximately 80 km/h, approximately 50 mph can be enough to produce a swaying or fishtailing motion, depending on the design of trailers and the loads they are carrying. Danger of accident or damage to property.

Keep to an appropriate speed when towing a trailer. In case of swaying or fishtailing motions, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.◄

WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be adapted because of the increased axle load when towing a trailer. Driving with an inadequate tyre inflation pressure can damage the tyres. Danger of accident or damage to property. Do not exceed a speed of 100 km/h/60 mph. Increase the tyre inflation pressure of the towing vehicle by 0.2 bar. Note the maximum possible tyre inflation pressure stated on the tyre.◄

Uphill gradients

In the interest of safety and to avoid holding up other traffic, do not attempt to climb gradients steeper than 12 % when towing a trailer.

If higher trailer loads are permitted later, the limit is 8 %.

Driving off on upward gradients

To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.

Downhill gradients

On downward inclines, a vehicle combination has tendency to snake at an earlier stage.

Before the downward incline, shift down manually to the next-lowest gear and drive downwards slowly.

High loads and high outside temperature

NOTE

On long journeys with high trailer loads, a high outside temperature and a low fuel tank content, the fuel system can overheat leading to reduced engine power. Danger of damage to property. Refuel in good time. Make sure that on long journeys with high trailer loads and a high outside temperature, the fuel tank is more than 1/4 full.◂

Trailer Stability Control

Principle

The system helps you to neutralise a trailer's tendency to swing from side to side.

It detects snaking movements and promptly brakes the vehicle so that road speeds fall to below the critical range and the vehicle combination is stabilised.

If the power socket for the trailer is in use but no trailer is attached, for example during use of a bicycle carrier with lights, the system may become active in extreme driving situations.

Operating requirements

The system is operational when towing a trailer and when using the trailer socket as of approximately 65 km/h, 40 mph.

System limits

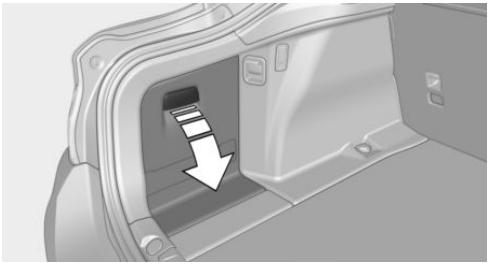
- The system cannot intervene if the trailer veers instantly, for example on slippery or loose road surfaces.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity can tip over before a swinging motion is detected.
- The system is not operational if Dynamic Stability Control DSC is deactivated or has failed.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Trailer coupling with electrically swivellable trailer hitch

General

The swivel-mounted ball head for the trailer tow hitch is located on the underside of the vehicle.

The LED illuminates green if the system is operational.



The button for swinging the swivel-mounted ball head in and out is behind the left side trim in the boot.

Swivelling out the ball linkage

1. Open the boot.
2. Step out of the swivelling area of the ball linkage behind the vehicle.
3. Press the button in the boot.

   The ball linkage swivels outwards. The LED in the button flashes in green.
4. Wait until the ball linkage has reached the end position.

WARNING

If the ball linkage is not locked, unstable driving statuses or accidents can result. Danger of accident or damage to property. Before a journey with a trailer or load carrier, check that the ball linkage is correctly locked.

If the ball linkage is not properly locked, the LED in the button illuminates in red.◀

Swivelling in the ball linkage

1. Uncouple the trailer or load carrier, remove the fittings for the track-stabilising devices, pull out the connector for the trailer's power supply and, if applicable, pull the adapter out of the socket.
2.  Press the button in the boot.

   The ball linkage swivels inwards. The LED in the button flashes in green.
3. Wait until the ball linkage has reached the end position.

Automatic interruption or reversal of the swivel movement

General

The swivel movement is interrupted automatically, possibly reversed or is not performed if the current limit values are exceeded, for example at very low temperatures or in the case of mechanical resistance.

Repeat the swivel movement with the engine running

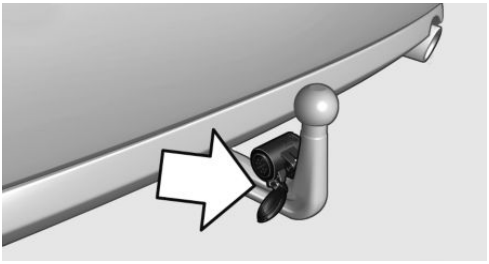
1. Start engine using start/stop button.
2.  Press the button in the boot and hold it until the ball linkage has moved completely in or out.

If necessary, repeat the swivel movement with the button pressed and the engine running.

The LED in the button lights up green when the ball linkage has reached an end position.

If this reoccurs, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

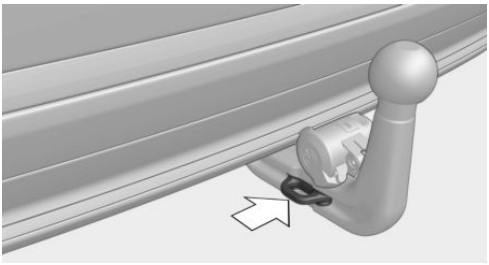
Trailer socket



The trailer socket is located on the trailer tow hitch.

Fold the cover downwards.

Eye for securing cable



There is an eye on the trailer tow hitch for attaching the trailer securing cable.

For increased safety when towing a trailer during a journey, attach the trailer securing cable to the eye.

Saving fuel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The vehicle possesses wide-ranging technologies for reducing consumption and emission levels.

Fuel consumption depends on various factors.

A number of measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and reduce burden on environment.

Removing transported load that is not required

Extra weight increases fuel consumption.

Removing add-on parts after use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof racks and rear-mounted racks after use.

Add-on parts on the vehicle interfere with its aerodynamic performance and inflate fuel consumption.

Closing windows and the Glass Roof

An opened Glass Roof or opened window increases the drag and thus reduces the range.

Tyres

General

Tyres can have differing effects on fuel consumption. For example, fuel consumption can be affected by tyre size.

Checking tyre pressures regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct tyre inflation pressures at least twice a month and before setting off on a longer journey.

Insufficient tyre inflation pressure enlarges the rolling resistance and thus increases fuel consumption and tyre wear.

Setting off immediately

Do not warm up the engine with the vehicle at a standstill; it is preferable to set off straight away, driving at moderate engine speeds.

This brings the cold engine to operating temperature as quickly as possible.

Driving with foresight

Avoid accelerating and braking unnecessarily.

Keep an appropriate distance from the preceding vehicle.

Anticipating the road situation and adopting a smooth driving style will reduce fuel consumption.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Avoid high engine speeds

Basic principle: driving at low engine speeds reduces fuel consumption and wear.

Use 1st gear to drive off. As from 2nd gear, accelerate quickly. Avoid high engine speeds and shift up quickly.

Shift into the highest possible gear when you have reached the desired speed and drive at a constant speed with the lowest possible engine speed.

Pay attention to the shift point indicator in the vehicle, if fitted, see page 103.

Using overrun mode

When approaching a red traffic light, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll.

On downward stretches, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll.

The fuel supply is interrupted when coasting.

Switching off engine if stopping for a relatively long time

When you stop the vehicle for longer periods, for example at traffic lights, railway crossings or in traffic jams, switch off the engine.

Auto Start Stop function

The Auto Start Stop function of the vehicle shuts off the engine automatically during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then started again, the fuel consumption and emissions are reduced compared with a permanently running engine. Savings can be made just by stopping the engine for a few seconds.

Fuel consumption also depends on other factors, such as driving style, road condition, maintenance or environmental factors, for example.

Switching off functions that are not necessary at the moment

Functions such as seat heating or rear window heating require a great deal of energy and reduce the range, especially in city traffic and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch these functions off if they are not required.

The ECO PRO drive program supports energy-saving use of comfort functions. These functions are automatically deactivated wholly or partially.

Having the maintenance done

Have the vehicle serviced regularly to achieve optimal economy and lifetime. BMW recommends having maintenance work carried out by a BMW Service partner.

Please also see the BMW Maintenance System, see page 241.

ECO PRO

Principle

ECO PRO supports a low energy consumption driving style. To do this, the engine control and comfort functions are adjusted, such as, for example, the air conditioning power.

The engine is disconnected from the gearbox in selector lever position D under certain circumstances. The vehicle rolls when idling to optimise fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

In addition, situation-dependent notes can be displayed which help you to drive with optimum fuel consumption.

In the instrument cluster, the extension of the range achieved as a result can be displayed as a bonus range.

General

The system comprises the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ECO PRO bonus range, see page 206.
- ECO PRO tips driving instruction, see page 206.
- ECO PRO air conditioning, see page 205.
- ECO PRO route-ahead assistant driving instruction, see page 207.
- ECO PRO coasting driving condition, see page 208.
- ECO PRO driving style analysis, see page 209.

Overview

Drive experience switch

Activate ECO PRO

Press the button until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO

Via driver experience switch

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "Configure ECO PRO"

Via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. Where applicable, "Driving Experience Control" or "Driving mode"
4. "Configure ECO PRO"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

ECO PRO Limit

- Activate ECO PRO Limit:

  "ECO PRO limit":

  An ECO PRO tip is shown when the speed of the set ECO PRO limit is exceeded.
- Set the ECO PRO Limit speed:

  "Tip at:"

  Select required speed.

ECO PRO air conditioning

Activate ECO PRO air conditioning:

"ECO PRO climate control"

The air conditioning is adjusted for efficient fuel consumption.

A slight deviation from the temperature set such as a longer heating up and/or cooling down of the interior is therefore possible, in order to lower consumption.

The power to the seat heating and mirror heating is also reduced.

Coasting

Activate coasting:

"Coasting"

When rolling off, the engine can be operated at idle in a way that saves fuel by coasting.

The function is only available in ECO PRO drive mode.

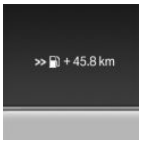
Deactivate the function to use the braking effect of the engine when driving downhill.

ECO PRO saving potential

It is shown how much percentage of the possible saving potential can be achieved with the current configuration.

Display in the instrument cluster

ECO PRO bonus range



An extension of range can be achieved due to adjusted driving style.

This can be displayed as bonus range in the instrument cluster.

The bonus range is contained in the display of the range.

After filling up, the bonus range is automatically reset.

ECO PRO efficiency display

The efficiency of the driving style is indicated by the colour of the ECO PRO displays in the instrument cluster:

- Blue display: efficient driving style.
- Grey display: adjust driving style, for example, by coming off the gas.

The colour changes to blue as soon as all the conditions for driving with optimised fuel consumption are met.

Depending on the equipment, the ECO PRO display is also provide information about the current driving style. A pointer moves on a scale for this purpose. The pointer indicates whether energy is being consumed by acceleration, or energy is being recovered by rolling or braking. The driving style is efficient if the pointer on the scale is moving within the blue band.

ECO PRO tip, driving note

The arrow shows that the driving style can be adjusted to be more efficient on fuel consumption, for example, by coming off the gas.

Activating driving style and ECO PRO tips display

The efficiency display and ECO PRO tips in the instrument cluster are displayed if the ECO PRO display is activated.

Activating display:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "ECO PRO information"

ECO PRO tip, symbols

Symbol	Measure
	Come off the gas for efficient driving style or decelerate carefully.
	Reduce speed to the selected ECO PRO speed.
	Steptronic transmission: shift from M/S to D.
	Steptronic transmission / manual gearbox: follow gearshift recommendation.
	Manual gearbox: engage idling for engine stop.

Display on the Control Display

Displaying EfficientDynamics information

The current operating method of the ECO PRO functions can be shown on the Control Display.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "EfficientDynamics"
4. Select the symbol.

Following functions are displayed:

- Auto Start Stop function.
- Energy recuperation.
- Coasting.

Showing fuel consumption history

The average consumption can be shown on the Control Display.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "EfficientDynamics"
4. Select the symbol.

Vertical bars shows the fuel consumption for the selected time span.

Setting fuel consumption history time span

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. Set time span.

Resetting fuel consumption history

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Reset consumption history"

Route-ahead assistant

Principle

The function helps to save fuel and supports an anticipatory driving style. Using the navigation data, certain sections of the route ahead can be recognised early and pointed out.

The recognised sections of the route, such as built-up areas or bends ahead, for example, require a reduction in speed.

General

The note is also made if the section of the route ahead has cannot yet be detected when driving.

The note is shown until the section of the route is reached.

If there is an instruction, the speed can be reduced in way that saves fuel by coming off the gas and coasting.

Depending on the situation, the system also independently used the engine brake by interrupting the coasting, see page 208, function.

Functional requirements

The function depends on how up-to-date the navigation data is and their quality.

The navigation data can be updated.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

The note on a section of the route ahead is given as an ECO PRO trip for precautionary deceleration.

In the revolution counter, a long arrow up to the zero point of the efficiency display shows that a section of road in front has been detected.

Display in the Head-Up Display

The note for precaution can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.

Display on the Control Display

The Control Display shows if there is a corresponding section of the route.

Call up driving style analysis display:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Using route-ahead assistant

A section of the route ahead is shown:

1. Come off the gas.
2. Until reaching the section of the route shown, allow the vehicle to coast.
3. Adjust the speed by braking as necessary.

System limits

The function is not available in the following situations:

- Speed below 50 km/h, approximately 30 mph.
- In the area of temporary and variable speed limits, such as at road works.
- If the quality of the navigation data is insufficient.
- As long as Cruise Control is active.
- While towing a trailer.

Coasting

Principle

This function helps to save fuel.

To do this, the engine is automatically disconnected from the gearbox in selector lever position D under certain circumstances. The vehicle continues to roll in idle to reduce consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This vehicle condition is called coasting.

As soon as the brake or accelerator pedal is depressed, the engine is automatically connected again.

General

Coasting is a component of ECO PRO drive mode.

By calling up the ECO PRO drive mode via the drive experience switch coasting is automatically activated.

The function is available over a given speed range.

A precautionary driving style helps to use the function as often as possible and supports the consumption-reducing effect of coasting.

Functional requirements

The function is available in ECO PRO drive mode in the speed range of approximately 50 km/h, approximately 30 mph to 160 km/h, approximately 100 mph if the following conditions are met:

- Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not operated.
- Selector lever in selector lever position D.
- Engine and gearbox are at operating temperature.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Operation via shift paddles

Principle

Coasting vehicle condition can be influenced using shift paddles, depending on the equipment.

Activating, deactivating coasting using shift paddles

1. Shift into the highest gear via the + shift paddle.
2. Actuate the + shift paddle again to enter into coasting mode.

Actuate the - shift paddle to deactivate.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

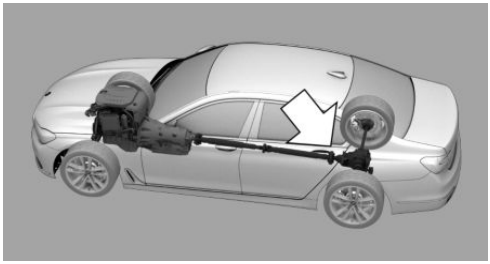
The marking in the efficiency display has a blue background and is at zero. The revolution counter displays information about the idle speed.

The coasting point display is illuminated at zero when coasting.

Display on the Control Display

In EfficientDynamics, the drive state coasting is shown during the journey.

The route covered in the coasting drive state is displayed in the fuel consumption history. The counter reading is reset before the start of each journey.



Blue colour: coasting drive state.

Displaying EfficientDynamics information

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "EfficientDynamics"
4. Select the symbol.

System limits

The function is not available if one of the following conditions is met:

- If DSC OFF or TRACTION is activated.
- If Cruise Control is activated.
- When driving in the dynamic boundary range.
- When driving on steep uphill or downhill inclines.
- When towing a trailer.
- If the battery charge level is temporarily too low.
- If the vehicle's electrical system is drawing too much current.

ECO PRO driving style analysis

Principle

The function helps develop a particularly efficient driving style and to save fuel.

To do this, the driving style is analysed. Evaluation is done in various categories and is shown on the Control Display.

Using this display, the individual driving style can be adjusted to save fuel.

The last fifteen minutes of a journey are evaluated.

Due to an efficient driving style, the range of the vehicle can be increased.

This gain in range is shown as a bonus range on the instrument cluster and Control Display.

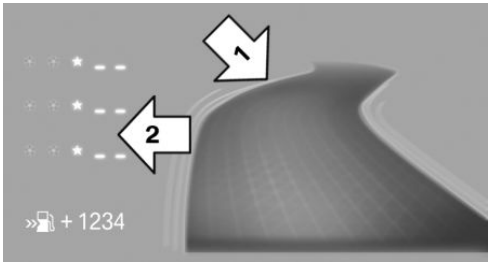
Operating requirements

The function is available in ECO PRO Mode.

Calling up ECO PRO driving style analysis

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Display on the Control Display



The display of the ECO PRO driving style analyser consists of a symbolised route and a table of values.

The road symbolises the efficiency of the driving style. The more efficient the driving style, the more evenly the route is illustrated, arrow 1.

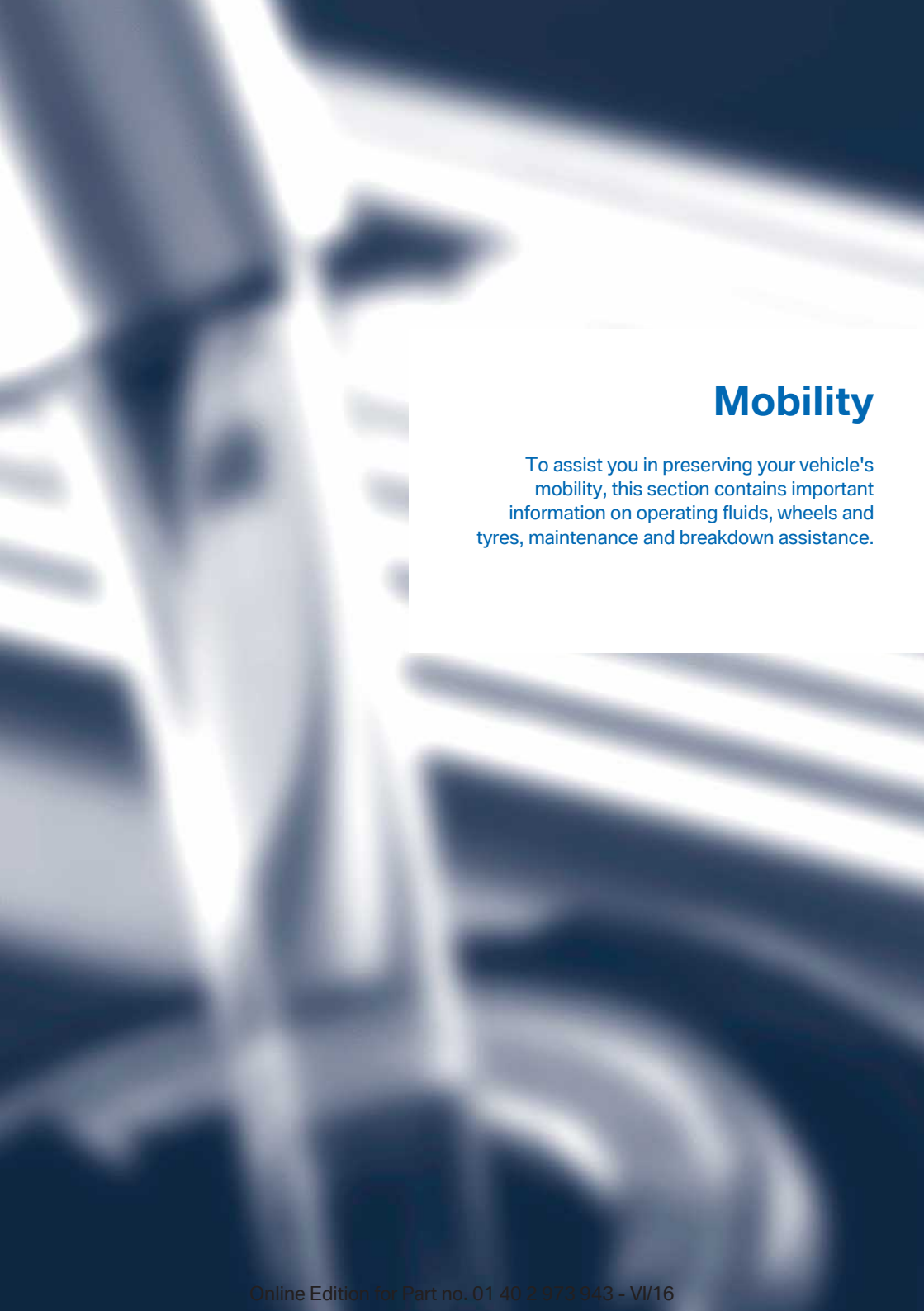
The table of values contains stars. The more efficient the driving style, the more stars are contained in the table and the faster the bonus range increases, arrow 2.

On the other hand, if driving style is inefficient, a bumpier road and a reduced number of stars is shown.

To support an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are shown during the journey.

Tips on energy-saving driving style, saving fuel, see page 203.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16



Mobility

To assist you in preserving your vehicle's mobility, this section contains important information on operating fluids, wheels and tyres, maintenance and breakdown assistance.

Refuelling

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Before refuelling, observe notes on fuel quality, see page 216.

For diesel engines

The filler neck is designed for refuelling at diesel pumps.

Safety note

NOTE

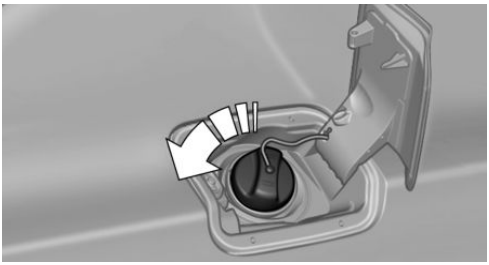
If the range drops below 50 km, approximately 30 miles the engine could not be supplied any more with sufficient fuel. Engine functions are no longer ensured. Danger of damage to property. Refuel in good time.◄

Fuel tank cap

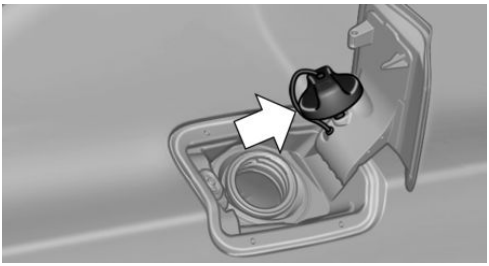
Opening

1. Briefly press rear edge of fuel filler flap.

2. Turn the fuel tank cap anticlockwise.



3. Place the fuel tank cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.



Closing

1. Fit the tank cap and turn clockwise until it is clearly heard to click into place.
2. Close fuel filler cap.

WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel tank cap can be clamped and crushed when screwing closed. It will then not be possible to close the cap properly. Fuel or fuel vapours can leak out. Danger of injury or damage to property. Make sure that the retaining strap does not get trapped and crushed when closing the cap.◄

Unlocking fuel filler flap manually

For example, with an electrical fault.

Have the fuel filler flap unlocked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Note when refuelling

General

When refuelling, insert the filler nozzle fully into the filler neck. Lifting the filler nozzle during refuelling results in the following:

- The fuel supply being cut off prematurely.
- Fuel vapour and fumes being fed back less effectively.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle cuts out for the first time.

Comply with the safety regulations displayed at filling stations.

Safety instructions

NOTE

Fuels are poisonous and aggressive. Overfilling the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. If it comes into contact with painted surfaces, it can damage them. This pollutes the environment. Danger of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.◄

Fuel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Fuel quality

General

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that is adapted to the conditions in winter or summer. Fuel that is sold in winter facilitates cold starting, for example.

Petrol

General

For optimal fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphur-free or as low in sulphur content as possible.

Fuels labelled on the pump as containing metal must not be used.

You can fill up with fuels with a maximum proportion of ethanol of 10 %, in other words E10.

The engine has anti-knock control. This means that different petrol grades can be used.

Safety instructions

NOTE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. In addition, the catalytic converter will be permanently damaged. Danger of damage to property. Do not use the following fuel or additives with petrol engines:

- Leaded petrol.
- Metallic additives, for example manganese or iron.

After filling the wrong fuel, do not press the start/stop button. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◄

NOTE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and engine. Danger of damage to property. Do not fill with any fuels that either have a higher ethanol content than recommended or that contain methanol, for example M5 to M100.◄

NOTE

Fuel below the specified minimum quality can impact the engine function or lead to engine damage. Danger of damage to property. Do not refuel petrol below the specified minimum quality.◄

Petrol grade

Super with RON 95.

Minimum grade

Unleaded petrol with RON 91.

Diesel

Safety note

NOTE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Danger of damage to property.

Note the following with diesel engines:

- Do not fill with rapeseed methyl ester RME.
- Do not fill with biodiesel.
- Do not fill up with petrol.
- No diesel additives.

After filling the wrong fuel, do not press the start/stop button. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◄

Diesel quality

The engine is designed to run on diesel fuel to DIN EN 590.

BMW recommends Shell Quality Fuels

BMW Diesel with BluePerformance

Principle

BMW Diesel with BluePerformance reduced nitrous oxides in the diesel exhausts, in which the reduction agent AdBlue is injected into the exhaust stream. In the catalytic converter, this produces a chemical reaction that minimises the nitrous oxides.

The vehicle features a tank system which can be replenished.

To start the engine normally, sufficient reduction agent must be present.

AdBlue is a registered trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e. V. (VDA).

Heating up the system

To bring the system to operating temperature after the engine is starting from cold, the Steptronic transmission then changes later to the next gear.

Display on the Control Display

Range

The range until the latest possible top-up time is displayed. The amount to top up may be displayed.

Reduction agent can be topped up at any time.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "AdBlue"

Displays in the instrument cluster

Tank display

The display in the instrument cluster informs you of the remaining distance which can be travelled with the current level.

Do not completely use up the displayed distance. The engine can no longer be started again after it was stopped.

- White light: top up reduction agent at next opportunity.
- Yellow light: not enough reduction agent available. Remaining range is shown in instrument cluster. Immediately top up reduction agent.

AdBlue at minimum

- Remaining range is shown in instrument cluster: top up reduction agent. Engine continues to run, as long as it is not stopped and all other operating conditions are met, for example, enough fuel.

System fault

With a system fault, a Check Control message is displayed.

AdBlue topping up

BMW recommends having the reduction agent replenished by a Service Partner in the context of regular maintenance.

If you keep to this maintenance schedule, a single top-up is generally required between the maintenance appointments.

Under certain circumstances, for example, due to particularly dynamic driving style or operating the vehicle at high altitudes, topping up between maintenance appointments more than once may be necessary.

As soon as the tank display is shown in the instrument cluster, have the reduction agent topped up, to prevent the vehicle from no longer being able to be started.

AdBlue at a low temperatures

Due to its physical properties, it is possible that reduction agent has to be topped up, even between maintenance appointments at temperatures below - 5 °C/+ 23 °F. In this case, only top up with reduction agent directly before starting the trip.

At temperatures below - 11 °C/+ 12 °F the fill level cannot be measured.

Topping up AdBlue yourself

Safety instructions

WARNING

When the reduction agent container is opened, small quantities of ammonia vapours can emerge. Ammonia vapours have a pungent smell and irritate the skin, mucous membranes and eyes. Danger of injury. Do not inhale ammonia vapours. Do not allow reduction agent to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow it. Keep children away from reduction agents.◀

WARNING

Service products, for example oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. Danger of injury or life. Comply with the notes on the containers. Do not allow service products to come into contact with clothing, skin eyes. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.◀

NOTE

The constituents of reduction agent are highly aggressive. Danger of damage to property. Avoid contact of reduction agent with surfaces of the vehicle.◀

Suitable AdBlue

▷ AdBlue of standard ISO 22241-1

AdBlue is available in various containers. Preferably use the special bottle recommended by BMW. With this bottle and its special adapter, AdBlue can comfortably be topped up.

Top up quantity

When the reserve display is activated, top up with at least 3 bottles of reduction agent.

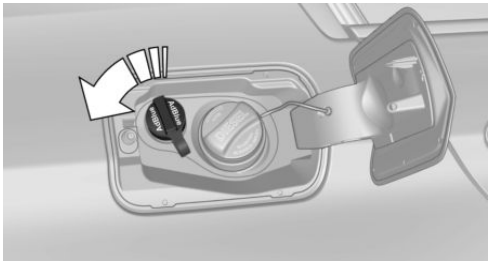
This corresponds to approximately 6 litres, approximately 1.5 gall.

Indicating top-up quantity

Precise top-up quantity is shown on Control Display.

1. My Vehicle
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "AdBlue"

Reduction agent tank

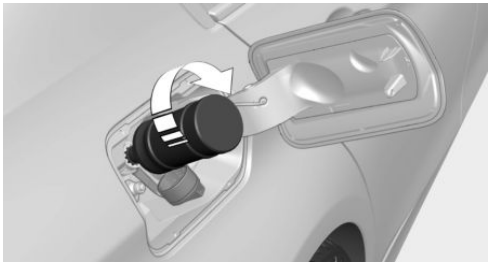


The fuel tank cap for the reduction agent is located next to the fuel tank cap for the fuel tank.

Topping up reduction agent

Top up reduction agent with ignition switched on.

1. Open fuel filler flap, see page 214.
2. Turn reduction agent tank lock anticlockwise and remove.
3. Fit bottle and turn until it stops, see arrow.

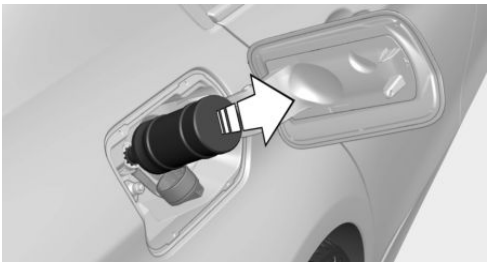


4. Press down bottle, see arrow.

   The tank in the vehicle is filled.

   The tank in the vehicle is filled when the level in the bottle does not change any more. It is not possible to overfill.

5. Pull back bottle, see arrow, and unscrew.



6. Put fuel tank cap back on and turn clockwise.
7. Close fuel filler flap.

After filling AdBlue

Note

WARNING

After filling an incorrect liquid, the system may heat up and catch fire. Danger of fire and injury. Only fill with liquids that are intended to be filled in the tank. Do not start the engine after filling an incorrect liquid.◂

Filling with an incorrect fluid

A Check Control message is displayed in case of filling with an incorrect liquid.

If the wrong type of liquid has been added, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Disposing of bottles

Bottles for AdBlue can be disposed of at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Only dispose of bottles with normal waste if the local regulations permit this.

Tank display

After topping up, the tank display continues to be shown with remaining range.

Engine can be started.

After a journey of several minutes, the tank display goes out.

AdBlue as a minimum

After filling up, the display continues to be shown.

Engine can only be started when the display is no longer illuminated.

1. Switch on ignition.

   Display is no longer illuminated after approximately 1 minute.
2. Engine can be started.

Wheels and tyres

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Tyre pressures

Information for your safety

A tyre's condition and pressure influence the following:

- Operating life of the tyre.
- Driving safety.
- Driving comfort.

Checking tyre inflation pressure

WARNING

A damaged tyre with too low or missing tyre inflation pressure at all impairs driving properties, for example steering and braking. Danger of accidents. Check tyre inflation pressure regularly and adjust as necessary, for example twice a month or before any long journey.◄

Tyres have a natural, uniform loss of tyre pressure.

Tyres heat up when driving and with the temperature of the tyre, the tyre inflation pressure increases. The tyre inflation pressure data relate to cold tyres or tyres at ambient temperature.

Only check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. In other words, after a journey for a maximum of 2 km, 1.25 miles or if the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours.

Inflating devices can display a pressure as much as 0.1 bar too low.

With runflat indicator: reinitialise the runflat indicator after adjusting tyre inflation pressure.

With tyre inflation pressure monitor: reset the tyre inflation pressure monitor after adjusting the tyre inflation pressure to a new value.

Tyre inflation pressure inscriptions

The tyre inflation pressures for the tyre sizes categorised by the vehicle manufacturer as suitable for the respective vehicle type can be found on the door pillar of the driver's door.

If the speed letter of the tyre cannot be found, the tyre inflation pressure of the corresponding size applies. The tyre inflation pressure data apply to tyres at ambient temperature.

For Australia/New Zealand

WARNING

The inflation pressures on the tyre label are applicable only for tyres explicitly mentioned on the label. Since tyre inflation pressures for tyres that may be covered by the label – by size, speed category and load rating/load index – but not explicitly mentioned on the label may be different. Please obtain adequate inflation pressures in accordance with the tyre

manufacturer's specifications at your tyre dealer.◄

Tyre sizes

The pressure values apply for the tyre sizes classified by the vehicle manufacturer as suitable and the tyre makes recommended for the respective vehicle type.

More information regarding wheels and tyres can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Tyre tread

Summer tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 3 mm, 0.12 in.

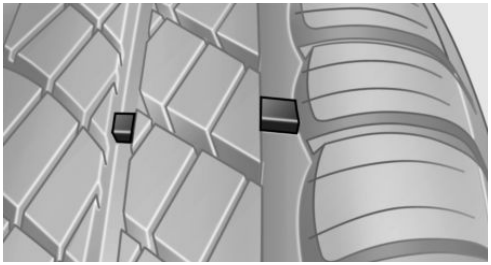
Below a tyre tread depth of 3 mm, approximately 0.12 in, there is a high risk of aquaplaning.

Winter tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 4 mm, approximately 0.16 in.

Below a tread depth of 4 mm, approximately 0.16 in, suitability for vehicle operation in winter is restricted.

Minimum tread depth



Wear displays are distributed across the tyre circumference and have the legally prescribed minimum height of 1.6 mm, approximately 0.06 in.

They are identified on the tyre's side wall by TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tyre damage

General

Inspect tyres regularly for damage, the presence of foreign bodies and wear.

Vehicle behaviour that is an indication of tyre damage or other faults:

- Unusual vibrations during the journey.
- Unusual vehicle response, such as pronounced pulling to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by, for example, running over kerbs, road damage etc.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Damaged tyres can result in lower tyre inflation pressure, leading to a loss of control over the vehicle. Danger of accidents. If you get a note about tyre damage during the journey, immediately reduce speed and come to a halt. Have the wheels and tyres checked. To do this, carefully drive to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. If necessary, have the vehicle towed or transported there.◄

WARNING

Damaged tyres can result in lower tyre inflation pressure, leading to a loss of control over the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Do not repair damaged tyres, have them renewed instead.◄

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Age of tyres

Recommendation

Irrespective of wear, change tyres after 6 years at the latest.

Date of manufacture

On the tyre side wall:

DOT ... 2116: the tyre was made in the 21st week of 2016.

Replacement of wheels and tyres

Fitting

Have the wheel fitted and balanced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Wheel/tyre combination

The correct wheel and tyre combination and rim designs for the vehicle can be consulted at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Incorrect wheel and tyre combinations will interfere with the proper functioning of various systems, such as ABS and DSC.

To maintain good vehicle handling, always fit tyres of the same make and tread pattern to all wheels.

After a tyre has been damaged, fit the original wheel and tyre combination again.

WARNING

Wheels and tyres that are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for example by touching the bodywork as a result of tolerances, in spite of having the same nominal size. Danger of accidents. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends using wheels and tyres that have been categorised as suitable for the respective vehicle type.◄

Recommended makes of tyre

BMW recommends particular brands of tyre for each tyre size. These can be seen by the asterisk on the side wall of the tyre.

New tyres

New tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately, for production reasons.

During the first 300 km, 200 miles, drive moderately.

Retreaded tyres

The manufacturer of your vehicle advises against the use of retreaded tyres.

WARNING

Retreaded tyres can have various tyre carcasses. Their durability may be reduced with increasing age. Danger of accidents. Do not use retreaded tyres.◄

Winter tyres

For operation on wintry carriageways, winter tyres are recommended.

Although so-called all-season tyres with an M +S label have better winter characteristics than summer tyres, they do not normally match the performance of winter tyres.

Maximum speed of winter tyres

If the vehicle is capable of speeds higher than the speed permitted for the winter tyres, an indicating label stating the maximum permitted speed for the tyres fitted must be displayed in the driver's field of view. The sticker is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If winter tyres are fitted, observe and comply with the respectively permitted maximum speed.

Run-flat tyres

For your own safety, when using run-flat tyres, do not mix with other types of tyre. There is no spare wheel available in the event of a breakdown. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Interchanging front and rear wheels

Different tread wear patterns arise on the wheels of the front and rear axles, depending on the individual operating conditions. To achieve even wear, it is possible to swap the wheels over from one axle to the other. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. After changing, check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust if necessary.

A wheel change from one axle to another is not permitted in vehicles with different tyre or rim dimensions on the front and rear axles.

Tyre storage

Store wheels and tyres in a cool, dry and preferably dark place when not in use.

Protect tyres against contamination from oil, grease and fuel.

Do not exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure indicated on the tyre's side wall.

Run-flat tyres

Label

RSC marking on the tyre side wall.

These wheels consist of tyres that are self-supporting within certain limitations, and special rims.

The reinforced side wall means that the tyre keeps the vehicle mobile to a degree even if tyre pressure has been lost.

Observe the information on continuing to drive with a flat tyre.

Changing run-flat tyres

For your own safety, use only run-flat tyres. There is no spare wheel available in the event of a breakdown.

A Service Partner of the manufacturer will be happy to answer any further questions.

Remedying flat tyres

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle on a solid surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- Switch on hazard warning lights.
- Protect the vehicle against rolling, by applying the parking brake.
- Engage the steering wheel lock in the straight ahead position of the wheels.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

- Allow all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- Set up warning triangle an appropriate distance away.

Mobility system

Principle

With the mobility system, minor tyre damage can be quickly sealed, to allow you to drive on. To do that, liquid sealant is pumped into the tyres which encloses the damage from the inside when it hardens.

The compressor can be used to check the tyre inflation pressure.

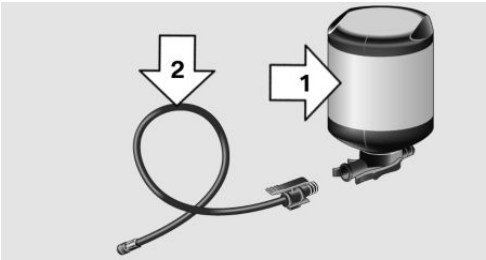
General

- Please observe the notes on the application of the Mobility system which are on the compressor and the sealant container.
- Applying the Mobility system can be ineffective for tyre damage as from a size of approximately 4 mm.
- Contact a Service partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if you are unable to put the tyre back in operation.
- If possible, foreign matter that has penetrated the tyre should remain inside the tyre.
- Remove the speed limit sticker from the sealant container and attach to the steering wheel.
- Using sealants can damage the TPM wheel electronics. If sealant is used, check the electronics as soon as you get an opportunity and have them replaced if necessary.

Storage

Mobility system is located under boot floor.

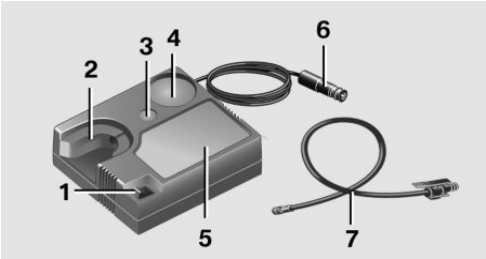
Sealant container



- Sealant container, arrow 1.
- Filler hose, arrow 2.

Note the use-by date on the sealant container.

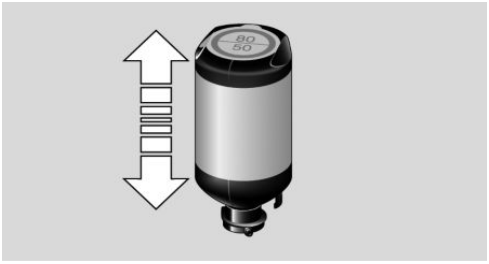
Compressor



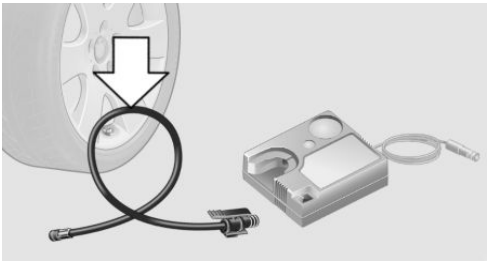
1 On/Off button
2 Holder for sealant container
3 Reduce tyre inflation pressure
4 Tyre inflation pressure display
5 Compressor
6 Plug/cable for socket
7 Connecting hose — saved in the compressor floor

Filling with sealing compound

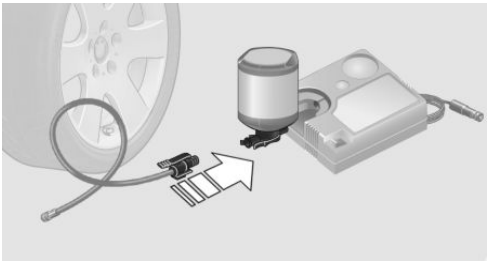
1. Shake the sealant container.



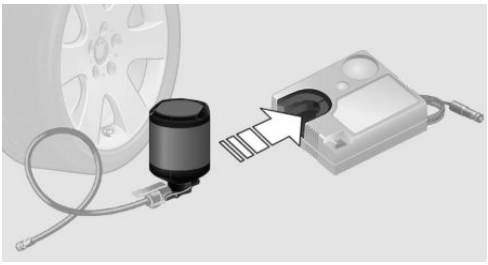
2. Take the connecting hose entirely from the compressor housing. Do not kink the hose.



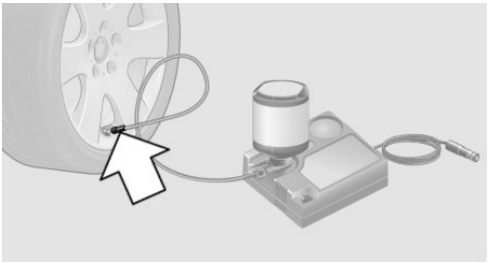
3. Plug the connecting hose onto the connector of the sealant container until it clicks.



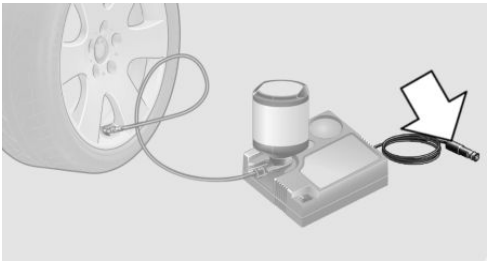
4. Push the sealant container upright into the bracket on the compressor housing, until it clicks.



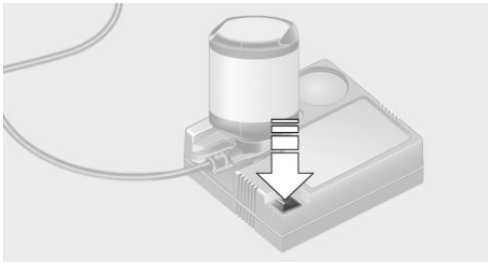
5. Screw the connecting tube onto the tyre valve of the faulty wheel.



6. Insert the plug into a socket in the vehicle while the compressor is switched off.



7. Switch on the compressor with the ignition switched on or the engine running.



DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless, but highly toxic. In enclosed spaces, the exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. Danger of fatal injury. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

NOTE

The compressor can overheat if operated for too long. Danger of damage to property. Do not let the compressor run for longer than 10 minutes.◀

Let the compressor run for approximately three to 8 minutes to fill the sealing compound and achieve a tyre inflation pressure of approximately 2.5 bar.

The tyre inflation pressure may rise to approximately 5 bar during the filling process of the sealing compound. Do not switch off the compressor during this step.

If it does not reach a tyre inflation pressure of 2 bar:

1. Switch off compressor.
2. Remove the filler hose from the wheel.
3. Drive forwards and backwards by 10 m, approximately 400 inches to distribute the sealant in the tyre.
4. Re-inflate the tyre with the compressor.

Contact a Service partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if the device does not reach a tyre inflation pressure of 2 bar.

Storing Mobility system

1. Pull the connecting hose of the sealant container off the wheel.
2. Pull the connecting hose off the sealant container.
3. Pack empty sealant container and connecting hose to avoid soiling in the boot.
4. Store Mobility system in the vehicle again.

Spreading sealant compound

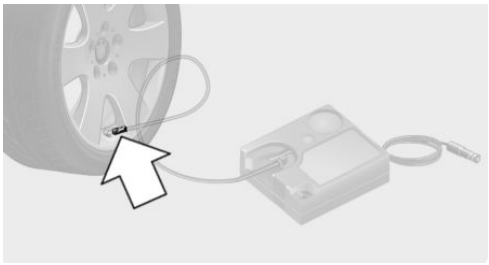
Immediately drive for approximately 10 km/5 miles to evenly distribute the sealing compound in the tyre.

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h/50 mph.

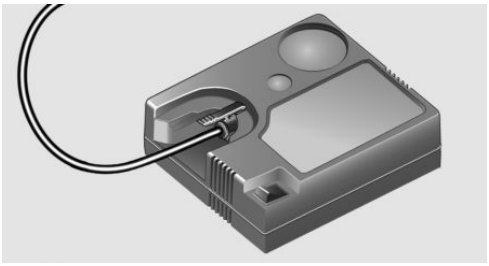
If possible, do not drive slower than 20 km/h/12 mph.

Correcting the tyre inflation pressure

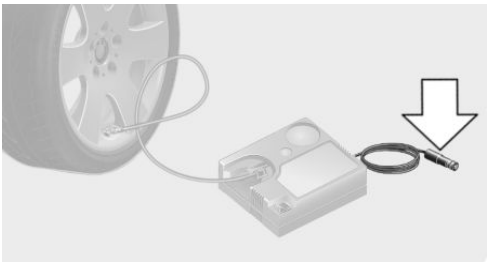
1. Stop in a suitable area.
2. Screw connecting hose onto the tyre valve.



3. Plug the connecting hose directly into the compressor.



4. Insert the plug into the socket on the inside of the vehicle.



5. Correct tyre inflation pressure to 2.5 bar.
   - ▷ Increase pressure: switch on the compressor with the engine running or the ignition switched on.
   - ▷ Reduce pressure: press the button on the compressor.

Continuing with journey

Do not exceed maximum permitted speed of 80 km/h, approximately 50 mph.

Reinitialise runflat indicator.

Reinitialise Tyre Pressure Monitor.

Have the punctured tyre and the sealant container of the Mobility system replaced as soon as possible.

Snow chains

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends using fine-link snow chains. Certain fine-link snow chains have been tested, found safe for use in traffic, and categorised as suitable by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Using

WARNING

When installing snow chains on unsuitable tyres, the snow chains can come in contact with vehicle parts. Danger of accident or damage to property. Only fit the snow chains on tyres that the manufacturer has authorised as suitable for snow chains to be used.◄

Snow chains may only be used in pairs on the rear wheels with tyres of the following sizes:

- ▷ 205/60 R 16.
- ▷ 225/55 R 16.
- ▷ 225/50 R 17.
- ▷ 225/45 R 18.

Observe the snow chain manufacturer's notes.

Ensure that the snow chains are always adequately taut. Re-tighten them if necessary in accordance with the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialise the runflat indicator with snow chains fitted, as the instrument might otherwise issue an incorrect reading.

Do not initialise the Tyre Pressure Monitor with snow chains fitted, as the instrument might otherwise issue an incorrect reading.

When driving with snow chains, activate Dynamic Traction Control briefly if necessary.

Maximum speed with snow chains

When snow chains are fitted, do not exceed 50 km/h, 30 mph.

Wheel change

General

For tyres with emergency running properties or when using tyre sealants, immediate wheel change for tyre inflation pressure loss in case of breakdown is not always required.

If required, the tools for changing wheels are available as optional accessories from a Service Partner of the manufacturer, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety instructions

WARNING

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example, snow, ice, tiles or similar, the jack may slip. Danger of injury. Perform the wheel/tyre change on a level, firm and non-slip surface if at all possible.◄

WARNING

The jack is only intended for raising the vehicle briefly during a wheel change. Even if the safety measures are complied with, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling over due to the jack slipping. Danger of injury or life. If the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie underneath the vehicle and do not start the engine.◄

WARNING

The jack is only optimised for lifting the vehicle and for use with the jacking points on the vehicle. Danger of injury. Do not lift another vehicle or other items with the jack.◄

WARNING

If the jack has not been guided into the jacking point provided, the vehicle might be damaged when the jack is extended, or the jack could slip. Danger of injury or damage to property. When extending, make sure that the jack is guided into the jacking point adjacent to the wheelhouse.◄

Protecting the vehicle against rolling

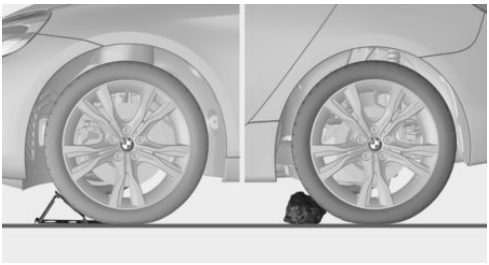
General

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that the vehicle should additionally be protected against rolling away during a wheel change.

On a level surface

Place chocks or other suitable objects, such as a stone, in front of and behind the wheel directly opposite to the one being changed.

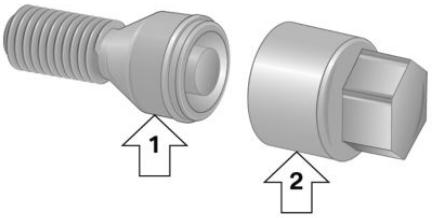
On a slight downhill slope



If it is necessary to change a wheel on a slight downhill slope, place chocks or other suitable objects such as a stone under the wheels of the front and rear axles.

Thiefproof wheel studs

The adapter of the thiefproof wheel studs can be found in the on-board tool kit or in an oddments tray in the on-board tool kit.



- Wheel stud, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Removing

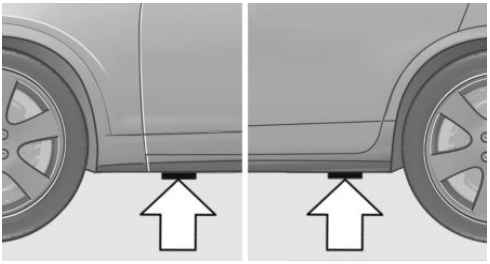
1. Place the adapter on the wheel stud.
2. Unscrew wheel stud.

After reattaching the wheel stud, remove the adapter again.

Preparing the vehicle

- Change the wheel as far away from flowing traffic as possible.
- Park the vehicle on firm, non-slip and level ground.
- Switch on hazard warning lights.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Engage a gear or select selector lever position P.
- As soon as the traffic permits, get all occupants to leave the vehicle and stand outside the danger area, such as behind the crash barriers.
- Depending on the equipment, take the tools and Emergency wheel out of the vehicle.
- If applicable, set up warning triangle at the correct distance or switch on hazard warning lights.
- Do not put any wooden blocks or similar underneath the jack, otherwise it cannot reach its carrying capacity due to the restricted height.
- Additionally protect the vehicle against rolling away.
- Undo the wheel studs by half a turn.

Jack mounting points



The jack mounting points are located in the illustrated positions.

Raising vehicle

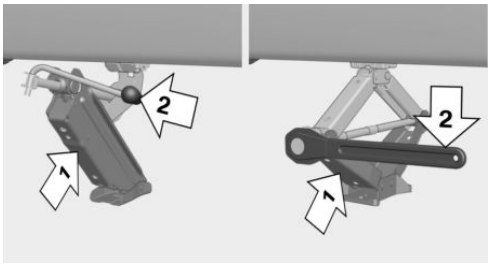
1. Use one hand to secure the jack, arrow 1, and your other hand to grip the crank, arrow 2.

   WARNING

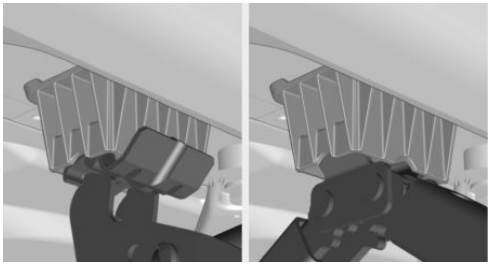
   Your hands or fingers could get trapped when using the jack. Danger of injury. Keep your hands in the described position

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

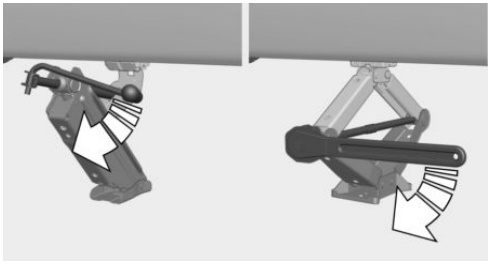
when using the jack, and do not change this position.◄



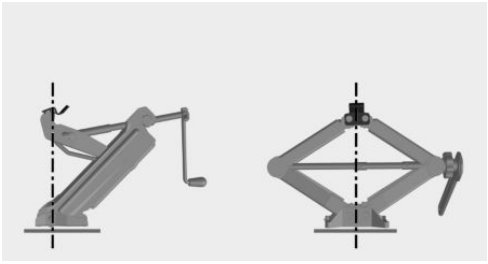
2. Guide the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



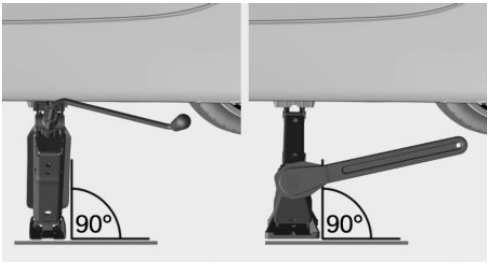
3. Turn the crank clockwise to extend the jack.



4. Make sure that the base of the jack has been extended vertically.



5. Make sure that the base of the jack is extended perpendicular to and at right angles below the jacking point.



6. Raised by cranking until the jack is supported on the ground with its entire surface and the wheel in question is at most 3 cm, 1.2 inches off the ground.

Wheel fitting

Only fit one Emergency wheel at most.

1. Unscrew the wheel studs and remove the wheel.
2. Put on the new wheel or Emergency wheel and tighten at least two studs crosswise until finger-tight.

   If non-original light alloy wheels not from the vehicle manufacturer are fitted, the wheel studs belonging to the wheels may also have to be used.
3. Tighten the remaining wheel studs until finger-tight and then tighten all the studs crosswise.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

4. Turn the crank on the jack anticlockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
5. Remove the jack.

After changing the wheel

1. Tighten the wheel studs crosswise. The tightening torque is 140 Nm, approximately 101 lb ft.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the boot.

   Due to its size, the faulty wheel cannot be accommodated under the boot floor.
3. Check tyre inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as necessary.
4. Reinitialise runflat indicator.

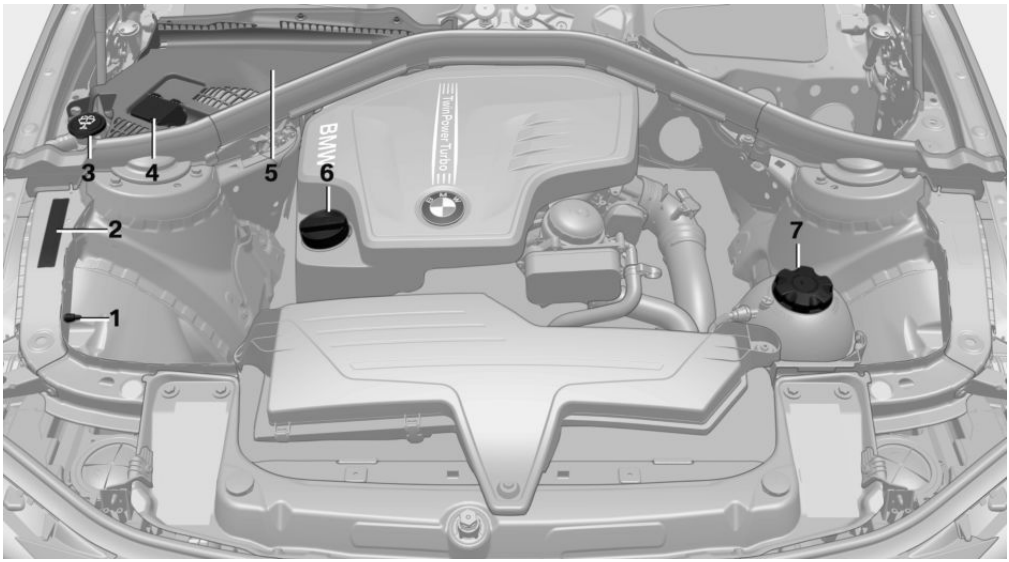
   Reset Tyre Pressure Monitor.
5. Check the tight fit of the wheel studs using a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest Service Partner of the manufacturer, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the damaged tyre renewed.

Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Engine compartment quick reference guide



1 Starting assistance, negative battery terminal

2 Vehicle identification number

3 Reservoir for washer fluid

4 Starting assistance, positive battery terminal

5 Engine compartment fuse box

6 Oil filler neck

7 Coolant tank

In 6-cylinder and diesel engines, the coolant tank is located on the opposite side of the engine compartment.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Bonnet

Safety instructions

WARNING

Incorrectly performed work in the engine compartment can damage components and lead to a safety risk. Danger of accident or damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment undertaken by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◄

WARNING

The engine compartment contains moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move when the vehicle is switched off, for example the radiator fan. Danger of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.◄

WARNING

The bonnet has projecting parts on the inside, for example locking hooks. Danger of injury. When the bonnet is open, watch out for projecting parts and keep these areas clear.◄

WARNING

If the bonnet is not correctly locked, it can come open during the journey and impair visibility. Danger of accidents. Stop immediately and close the bonnet correctly.◄

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when opening and closing the bonnet. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the bonnet is free.◄

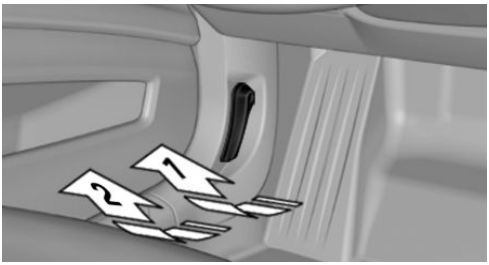
NOTE

When wipers are folded away from the windscreen, they can be trapped when the bonnet is opened. Danger of damage to property. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the wipers with wiper blades fitted are in contact with the windscreen.◄

Opening bonnet

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Bonnet is released.



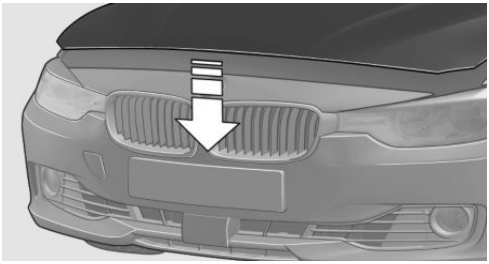
2. After releasing the lever, pull lever again, arrow 2.

   Bonnet is opened.

Indicator and warning lamps

With the bonnet unlocked, a Check Control message is shown.

Closing bonnet



Let the bonnet fall from approximately 40 cm, 16 in and then push down to fully lock the bonnet.

The bonnet must engage into place on both sides.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Engine oil

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The engine oil consumption depends on the driving style and operating conditions.

Engine oil consumption can be increased, for example, in the following situations:

- Dynamic driving style.
- Running in the engine.
- Engine idling.
- Use of engine oil grades categorised as unsuitable.

Therefore check the engine oil level regularly each time you fill up with fuel.

The vehicle has electronic oil measurement.

Electronic oil measurement has two measurement principles:

- Status display.
- Detailed measurement.

Electronic oil measurement

Status display

Principle

The engine oil level is electronically monitored when travelling and shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum, a check control message is shown.

Requirements

A current measurement is available after approximately 30 minutes of the journey. With a shorter journey, the status of the last sufficiently long journey is shown.

When frequently making short trips, regularly take a detailed measurement.

Displaying engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

Messages for the engine oil level

Different messages are shown on the display, depending on the engine oil level. Follow these messages.

If there is too little engine oil, within the next 200 km, approximately 120 miles top up.

NOTE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. Danger of damage to property. Immediately replenish engine oil.◀

Ensure not to top up with too much engine oil.

NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. Danger of damage to property. Do not top up with too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

Detailed measurement

Principle

In the detailed measurement, the engine oil level is checked at a standstill and shown on a scale.

With a petrol engine:

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum, a Check Control message is shown.

With diesel engine:

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum or an overfill is established, a Check Control message is shown.

During the measurement, the idle speed is slightly raised.

General

A detailed measurement is only possible with certain engines.

Requirements

- Vehicle is standing horizontally.
- Manual gearbox: gear lever in neutral position, clutch and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Carrying out a detailed measurement

Carry out a detailed measurement of the engine oil level:

Confirm message to engine oil level display.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Measure engine oil level"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and shown on a scale.

Duration: approximately 1 minute.

Adding engine oil

General

Do not top up engine oil unless message is displayed in instrument cluster. The top-up amount is specified in the message on the instrument cluster.

Switch off the ignition and securely stop the vehicle before topping up with engine oil.

Ensure not to top up with too much engine oil.

Safety instructions

WARNING

Service products, for example oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. Danger of injury or life. Comply with the notes on the containers. Do not allow service products to come into contact with clothing, skin eyes. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.◀

NOTE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. Danger of damage to property.

Top up the engine oil within the next 200 km, approximately 120 miles.◀

NOTE

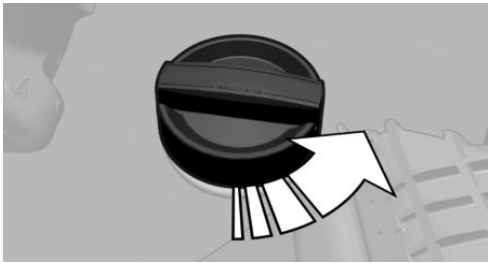
Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. Danger of damage to property. Do not top up with too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

Overview

The oil filler neck is in the engine compartment, see page 233.

Opening the oil filler neck

1. Open bonnet, see page 234.
2. Open the oil filler neck anticlockwise.



3. Add engine oil.

Engine oil types for topping up

General

The engine oil quality is decisive for the lifetime of the engine.

Several engine oil types are not available in all countries.

Safety instructions

NOTE

Oil additives can damage the engine. Danger of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.◄

NOTE

Incorrect engine oil can lead to engine malfunctions and damage. Danger of damage to property. When selecting the engine oil, make sure that the oil specification of the engine oil is correct.◄

Suitable engine oil grades

Engine oils with following oil specifications can be topped up:

Petrol engine
BMW Longlife-01.
BMW Longlife-01 FE.
BMW Longlife-04.
BMW Longlife-12 FE.
BMW Longlife-14 FE+.

The oil specification BMW Longlife-14 FE+ is only suitable for certain petrol engines.

Diesel engine
BMW Longlife-04.
BMW Longlife-12 FE.

The oil specification BMW Longlife-12 FE+ is only suitable for certain diesel engines.

Further information regarding suitable oil specifications and viscosities of engine oils can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Alternative engine oil types

If suitable engine oils are not available, up to 1 litre, approximately 2 pints of an engine oil with the following oil specification can be used for topping up:

Petrol engine
ACEA A3/B4.

Diesel engine
ACEA C3.

Viscosity classes

When selecting an engine oil, ensure that the engine oil has one of the viscosity classes SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40, SAE 5W-30, SAE 0W-20 or SAE 5W-20.

Viscosity classes SAE 0W-20 or SAE 5W-20 are only suitable for certain engines.

Further information regarding suitable oil specifications and viscosities of engine oils can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Oil change

NOTE

Engine oil not replaced in time can lead to increased engine wear and thus engine damage. Danger of damage to property. Do not exceed the service date indicated in the vehicle.◄

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the engine oil changed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Coolant

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information regarding suitable additives is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety instructions

WARNING

If the cooling system is opened when the engine is hot, coolant can escape and cause scalds. Danger of injury. Only open the cooling system when the engine has cooled down.◀

WARNING

Additives are harmful to health and incorrect additives can damage the engine. Danger of injury and damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow them. Only use suitable additives.◀

Coolant level

General

The coolant level is shown by Min and Max marks. The Min and Max marks are located in different positions depending on the coolant tank.

Overview

Depending on the engine version, the coolant tank is located on the right or left of the engine compartment.

Checking coolant level at the side marks

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. The coolant level is correct if it is between the Min. and Max. marks.

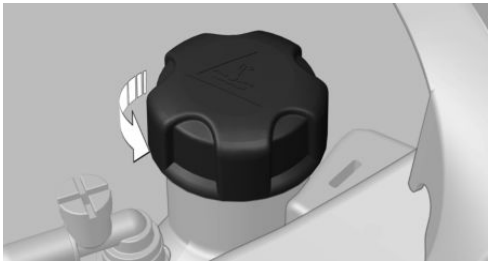
   The marks are on the side of the coolant tank.

Symbol	Meaning
▽	Maximum
△	Minimum

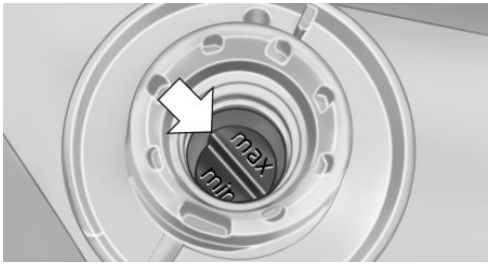
Checking coolant level in the filler neck

In the coolant tank there are yellow Min and Max markings.

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Turn cap on coolant tank slightly anti-clockwise until it starts to open, then allow the pressure to escape.

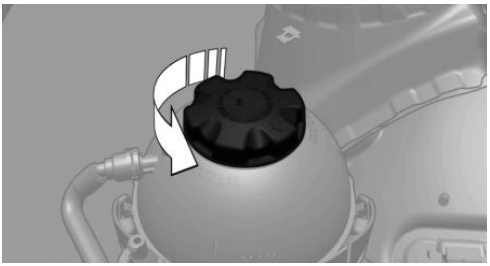


3. Open cap on coolant tank.
4. The coolant level is correct if it is between the Min. and Max. marks in the filler neck.



Topping up

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Turn the cap on the coolant tank slightly anti-clockwise until it starts to open, then allow the pressure to escape before opening it fully.



3. If necessary, slowly top up to the correct level; do not overfill.
4. Fit the cap and turn until it is clearly heard to click into place. The arrows on the coolant tank and the lid must be pointing towards each other.
5. Have the cause of coolant loss rectified as soon as possible.

Disposal

When disposing of coolant and coolant additives, comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations.

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

BMW Maintenance System

The maintenance system points out the necessary maintenance measures and so supports in maintaining the road and operational safety of the vehicle.

Scopes and intervals may vary depending on country variant. Replacement work, spare parts, operating materials and wear material are calculated separately. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Condition Based Service, CBS

Sensors and advanced algorithms monitor the conditions in which the vehicle is used. Condition Based Service uses this information to calculate the maintenance requirements.

The system thus enables adaptation of the scope of maintenance to the individual usage profile.

Information on service requirements can be displayed at the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information about the maintenance requirement is continuously stored in the remote control. The Service Partner can read out this data and suggest a maintenance scope for your vehicle.

This is why you should hand over the remote control that was last used for driving to your service advisor with the vehicle.

Periods out of use

Immobilisation periods with the vehicle battery disconnected are not taken into account.

Updating the time-dependent maintenance scope such as brake fluid and any engine oil and microfilter or activated carbon filter can be done by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Service history

Have maintenance and repair carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The maintenance work carried out is entered in the proof of maintenance and the vehicle data. The entries are, just like a service booklet, evidence of regular maintenance.

If an entry is made in the electronic service history of the vehicle, service-relevant data is not only saved in the vehicle but also on the central IT systems of BMW AG, Munich.

The data entered in the electronic service history can also be viewed by the new vehicle owner after a change of vehicle owner. In addition, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can view the data entered in the electronic service history.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

The vehicle owner can contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to object to the entry in the electronic service history, the associated data storage in the vehicle and data transfer to the vehicle manufacturer, in relation to his/her time as the vehicle owner. In that case, no entry is made in the electronic service history of the vehicle.

The entered maintenance activities can be displayed using the service history on the Control Display.

For Australia/New Zealand: maintenance

No maintenance work other than normal maintenance is required to keep the emission levels of your vehicle within the design limits.

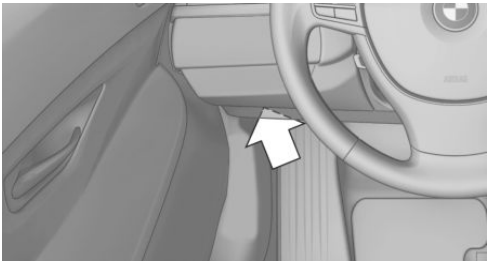
Socket for on-board diagnosis, OBD

Safety note

NOTE

Incorrect use of the on-board diagnosis socket can result in malfunctions in the vehicle. Danger of damage to property. Only have service and maintenance work involving the socket for the on-board diagnosis carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer, another qualified Service Partner, a specialist workshop or other authorised persons. Only connect devices that have been tested and found to be safe for use on the socket for on-board diagnosis.◀

Position



The OBD socket for checking components definitive in terms of the composition of the exhaust emissions is on the driver's side.

Emissions

- The warning light flashes:

  Engine malfunction that could damage the catalytic converter. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light is illuminated:

  Deterioration of exhaust emissions. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Recycling

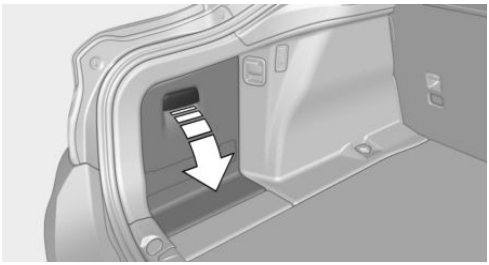
The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends handing the vehicle in at a take-back point nominated by the manufacturer at the end of its life cycle. The regulations concerning the returning of end-of-life vehicles may vary from country to country. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Replacing parts

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

On-board tool kit



The on-board toolkit is located behind the left flap in the boot.

Replacing the wiper blades

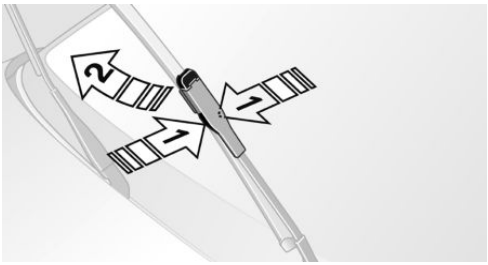
Safety note

NOTE

The windscreen can be damaged if the wiper arm drops onto the windscreen without wiper blades fitted. Danger of damage to property. Hold the wiper arm firmly when changing the wiper blades and do not put the wipers into contact with the windscreen unless wiper blades are fitted.◄

Wiper blades, replacing

1. To replace the wiper blades, place the wipers in the fold-out position, see page 88.
2. Fold out wiper arm and hold firm.
3. Press together securing spring, arrow 1, and fold out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Take the wiper blade forwards out of the fitting.
5. Insert new wiper blade in the opposite sequence until it engages.
6. Fold in wipers.

NOTE

When wipers are folded away from the windscreen, they can be trapped when the bonnet is opened. Danger of damage to property. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the wipers with wiper blades fitted are in contact with the windscreen.◄

Replacing the lamps and lights

General

Lamps and lights

Lamps and lights are an important aspect of driving safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the corresponding work carried out by a

Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

A spare lamp box is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Comply with the safety notes, see page 244.

Light-emitting diodes, LEDs

Some equipment versions have light-emitting diodes behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes resemble conventional lasers and are classified by legislation as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Comply with the safety notes, see page 244.

Headlight glass

During cool or humid weather, the exterior lights can mist over. When driving with the light switched on, the condensation disappears after a short time. There is no need to replace the headlight glass.

If there is an increasing build-up of moisture despite the headlights being switched on, for example water droplets in the light, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having the headlights checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Headlight adjustment

The adjustments of the headlight can be affected by changing lights and lamps. Have the headlight adjustment checked and if necessary corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety instructions

Lamps and lights

WARNING

Lamps can become hot during operation. Contact with the lamps can lead to burns. Danger of injury. Only replace lamps in cooled-down condition.◄

WARNING

Short circuits can occur when working on switched on lighting systems. Danger of injury or damage to property. Switch the respective lights off when working on the lighting system. Observe the possibly enclosed notes of the lamp manufacturer.◄

NOTE

Dirty lamps have a reduced lifetime. Danger of damage to property. Do not touch the glass of new lamps with your bare hands. Use a clean tissue or similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◄

Xenon light

DANGER

High voltages can be applied to the lighting system. Danger of fatal injury. Have work on the lighting system including replacing the lamps performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◄

Light-emitting diodes, LEDs

WARNING

Excessively intense brightness can irritate or harm the retina of the eye. Danger of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove covers from LEDs.◄

Front lights, replacing the lamps

Xenon headlight

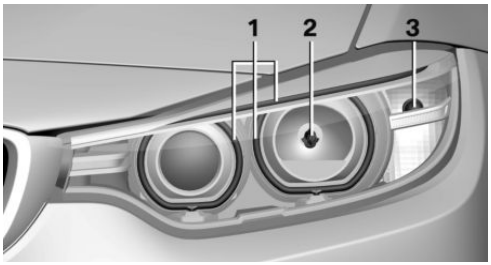
Notes

DANGER

High voltages can be applied to the lighting system. Danger of fatal injury. Have work on the lighting system including replacing the lamps performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◄

These lamps have a very long service life and are highly unlikely to fail. Frequent switching on and off shortens the service life.

Headlights



1 Side lights/daytime driving lights

2 Low-beam headlights/high-beam headlights/headlight flasher

3 Turn indicator

The low-beam headlights and high-beam headlights use xenon technology.

The side lights and daytime driving lights use LED technology.

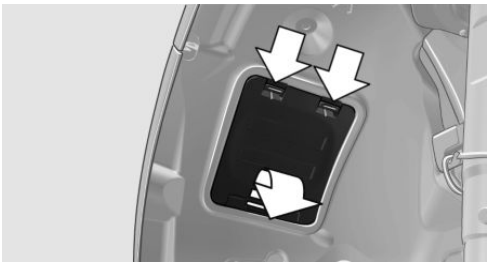
Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

Turn indicator

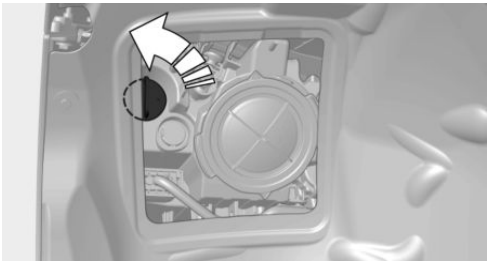
Comply with the safety notes, see page 244.

24 watt bulb, PY24W.

1. In the wheel arches, remove both brackets and the cover.



2. If needed, pull the interior trim of the wheel arch inwards. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove.



3. Press the bulb gently into the fitting, turn anticlockwise and remove.
4. Fit new bulb and bulb holder in the reverse sequence.
5. Attach the cover in the wheel arch.

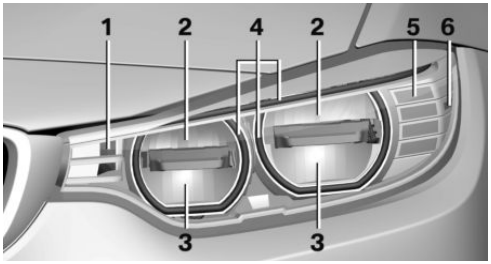
LED headlights

Light-emitting diodes, LEDs

All front lights and side turn indicators are in LED technology.

Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

Headlights



1 Cornering lights
2 Low-beam headlights/light flasher
3 High-beam headlights/headlight flasher
4 Side lights/daytime driving lights
5 Turn indicator
6 Side marking lights

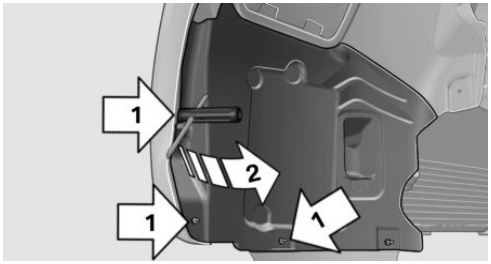
In the event of a defect, contact the Service Centre.

Halogen fog lights

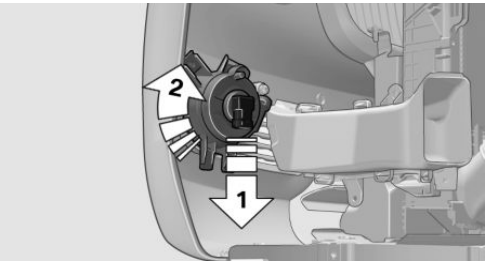
Comply with the safety notes, see page 244.

H8 bulb, 35 watts.

1. With the handle of the screwdriver from the on-board toolkit, unscrew the three screws, arrows 1 of the wheel arch trim. Carefully pull back wheel arch trim, arrow 2.



2. Pull the plug from the bulb, arrow 1.
   Turn bulb, arrow 2.
   Left side of vehicle: turn clockwise.
   Right side of vehicle: turn anticlockwise.
   Remove bulb.



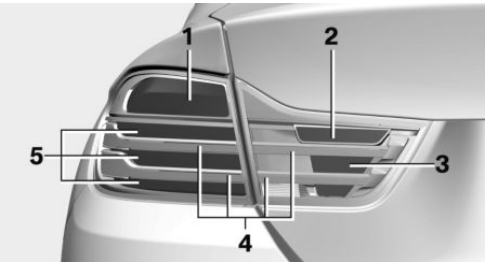
3. Insert new bulb, connect plug and screw on wheel arch trim.

Turn indicator in exterior mirror

Turn indicators in the exterior mirrors are designed in the LED technology. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

Rear lights, replacing the lamps

Overview



1 Turn indicator
2 Reversing lights
3 Rear fog lights
4 Tail lights
5 Brake light

Replacing the lamps of outer rear lights

General

Comply with the safety notes, see page 244.

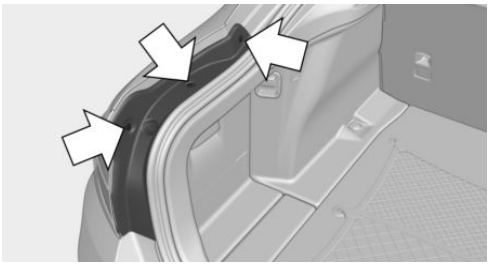
Turn indicator: 21 watt bulb, P21WLL.

Brake lights: 21 watt, H21WLL bulb.

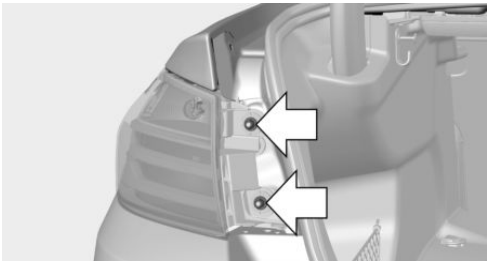
Tail lights are designed in LED technology. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

Removing rear light

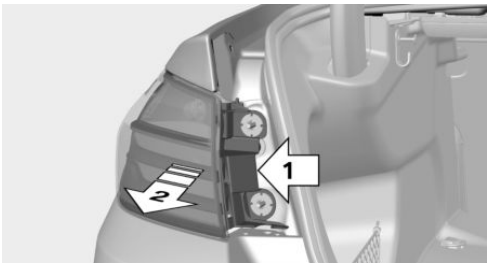
1. Open tailgate.
2. Unscrew three attachments with screwdriver, arrows, and remove cover upwards.



3. Undo both nuts with the handle of the screwdriver, arrows.



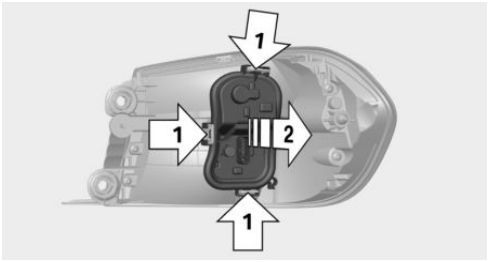
4. Grasp the rear lights on the inner edge, following arrow 1, and carefully pull back and out, arrow 2. In so doing, hold against your free hand, so that the rear light does not undo jerkily. Check that the foam rubber sealing ring on the linkage of the centring is plugged in.



5. Undo upper rest on the plug of the connecting cable and remove plug from the bulb holder.

Replacing the lamps

1. Undo the three fastenings, arrow 1, on the bulb holder and remove the bulb holder from the rear light, arrow 2.

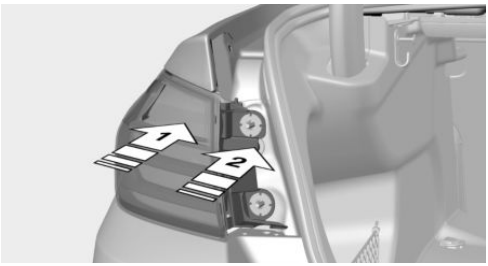


2. Press the faulty bulb gently into the fitting, turn anticlockwise and remove.
3. To use the new bulb and attach the bulb holder, proceed in the opposite sequence. Ensure that the bulb holder engages in all fastenings.

Installing rear light

1. Connect the connecting cable to the rear light and fix into the bracket of the bulb holder.
2. Ensure that the foam rubber sealing ring on the linkage of the centring, arrow 2, is present and undamaged.

3. Put the rear light outer onto the rubber bearing, arrow 1, and into the centring, arrow 2, and push firmly. Ensure that the rear light engages in the rubber bearing.



4. Screw on rear light with both nuts.
5. Insert cover and secure. Ensure that the sealing hose is not jammed.

Lights in the tailgate

General

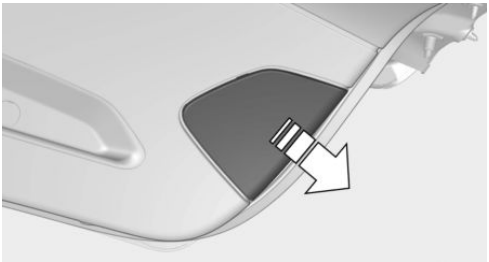
Comply with the safety notes, see page 244.

Reversing lights: 16 watt bulb, PW16W

Rear fog lights: 21 watt bulb, H21W.

All other lights in the tailgate use LED technology. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

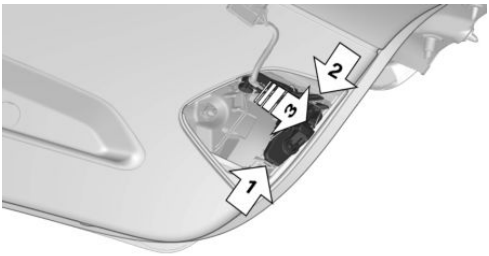
Access to the lights



Push the cover outwards, following the arrow, and remove.

Changing rear light and rear fog light

1. Undo the lower fastening, arrow 1.

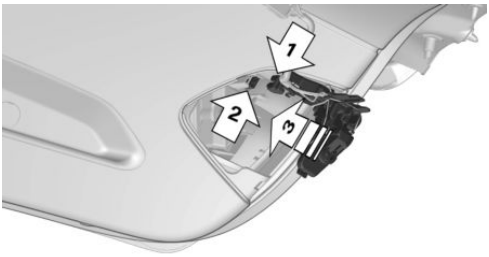


2. Undo the upper fastening, arrow 2. To do this, push middle stop inwards, and two outer stops outwards.

   Pull off bulb holder, arrow 3.
3. Undo faulty lamp for reversing and rear fog lights from the socket by turning anticlockwise.
4. Install new bulb.

Installing lamp holder

1. Plug both contacts, arrow 1, into the connectors, arrow 2.



2. Press on the lamp holder, arrow 3. Ensure that both fastenings engage on the outside.
3. Put the cover back on and push inwards.

Tail lights, number plate lights and centre brake light

These lights use LED technology. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Car battery

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free.

The quantity of acid filled is sufficient for the lifetime of the battery.

More information regarding the battery can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Replacing the battery

NOTE

Vehicle batteries that are classified as unsuitable may damage systems or result in functions no longer being carried out. Danger of damage to property. Only use vehicle batteries that have been classified as suitable by the vehicle manufacturer.◀

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having the vehicle battery registered with the vehicle by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to ensure that all comfort functions are fully available and eventual Check Control messages of these comfort functions are no longer displayed any more.

Recharging the battery

General

Ensure the battery is sufficiently charged to guarantee the entire lifetime of the battery.

In the following cases, charging the battery is necessary:

- When making frequent short journeys.
- When leaving for periods of longer than one month.

Safety instructions

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can operate with high voltages and high currents, which can overload or damage the 12 volt on-board network. Danger of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-starting connections in the engine compartment.◀

Jump-starting connections

Recharge the battery only with the engine stopped, via the jump-starting connections, see page 254, in the engine compartment.

Battery charger

Battery chargers developed especially for the vehicle and attuned to the on-board network can be obtained from Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Power failure

Following an electrical power outage, some equipment will have to be reinitialised or individual settings will need to be updated, for example:

- Seat and mirror memory: re-save positions.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass Roof and sun blind: initialise system.

Disposing of the old battery

Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them into an authorised collecting point.

Batteries filled with acid should be transported and saved upright. Protect batteries against falling over when in transit.

Fuses

General

Plastic tweezers and details of the fuse assignment can be found with the fuses in the boot.

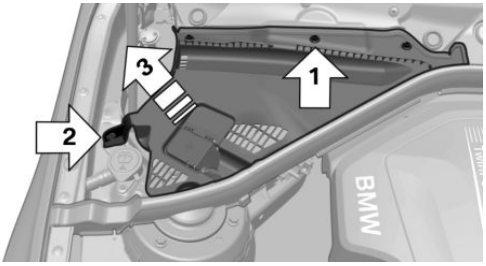
Safety note

WARNING

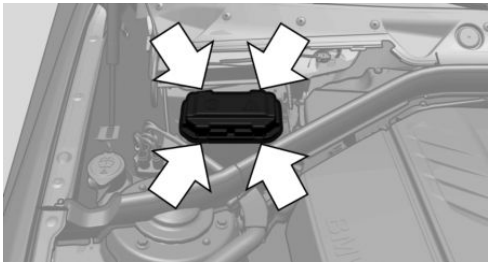
Incorrect or repaired fuses can overload electrical cables and components. Fire risk. Do not repair blown fuses or renew them by fuses with a different colour or amp rating.◄

In the engine compartment

1. Undo the three screws of the cover, arrow 1, with the on-board tool.

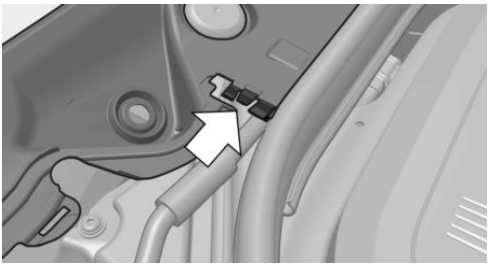


2. Pull fastening upwards, arrow 2.
3. Remove cover from the side, arrow 3.
4. Press on the four fastenings and remove the lid.



Attaching covers

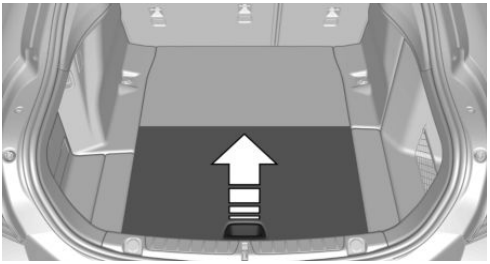
1. When attaching the lid, ensure that all four fastenings are engaged.
2. Attach cover under the rubber lip and then thread between the webs.



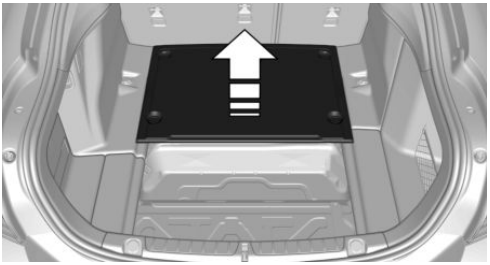
3. Press fastening downwards and tighten the three screws.

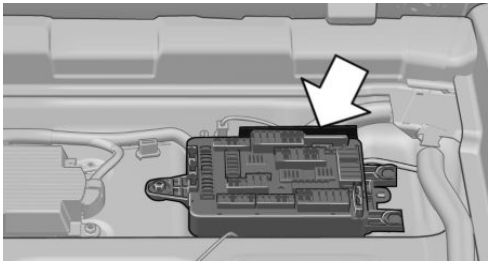
Inside the boot

1. Fold boot floor over, arrow.



2. Reach under boot floor and fold up boot floor, arrow.

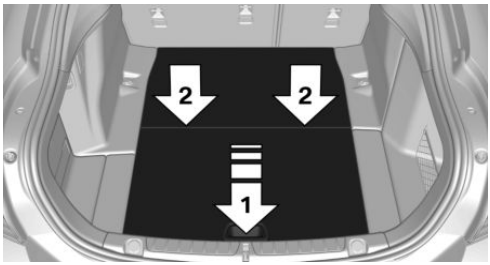




Details of the fuse assignment are on a separate leaflet.

Attaching boot floor

1. To attach the boot floor, carry out the same procedure in reverse order.
2. Pull boot floor to load sill, arrow 1, and push down, arrow 2.

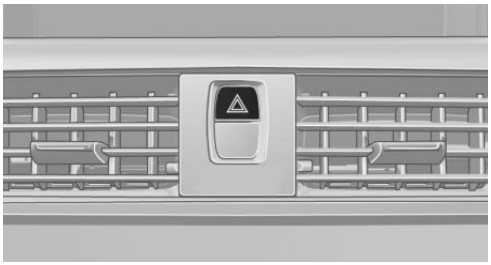


Help in the event of a breakdown

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Hazard warning lights



The button is located in the centre console.

Intelligent emergency call

Principle

The system can be used for sending an emergency call in emergency situations.

General

Press the SOS button in an emergency only.

Even if no emergency call through BMW is possible, in some cases an emergency call may still be set up to a public emergency call number. This depends on factors such as the specific mobile telephone network and the national regulations.

For technical reasons, it might not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions.

Overview

SOS button in roof lining

Requirements

- SIM card integrated into the vehicle is activated.
- Radio ready state is switched on.
- Emergency call system is functional.

Making an emergency call

1. Briefly press the cover flap to open it.
2. Press the SOS button until the LED on the button is illuminated green.

- LED is illuminated green when the emergency call is activated.

  If a cancellation request is displayed on the Control Display, the emergency call can be cancelled.

  If the situation permits, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established.
- LED flashes green when the connection to the emergency number has been established.

  When an emergency call is sent via BMW, data is sent to the emergency call centre in order to decide what rescue measures are

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

required. For example, the current position of the vehicle, if this can be determined. If questions posed by the emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are automatically initiated.

▷ If the LED is flashing green but the emergency call centre can no longer be heard over the loudspeaker, you may still be able to be heard by the emergency call centre.

Automatically activating emergency calls

In certain circumstances, an emergency call may be placed automatically immediately after a serious accident. An automatic emergency call is not influenced by pressing the SOS button.

Mobile Service

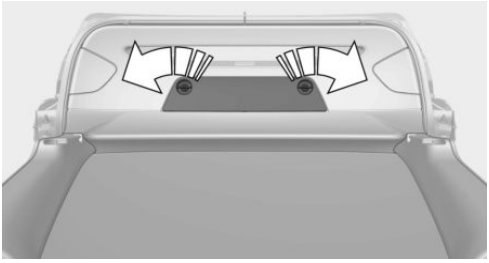
Standby

In many countries, the Mobile Service is available by phone twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week. Support can be obtained there in the event of a breakdown.

Breakdown assistance

If you need breakdown assistance, use the iDrive to view the number or to establish a connection directly to the Mobile Service.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located in the tailgate. To open the locks, turn the arrows through 90°. Open the trim panel.

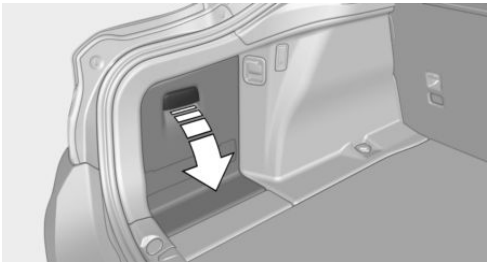
First-aid kit

General

The longevity of some items is limited.

Check the use-by dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired in good time.

Storage



The first-aid kit is located behind the left cover panel in the boot.

Starting assistance

General

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the engine can be started using two jump leads from an-

other vehicle's battery. Use only jump leads with fully insulated terminal clamps.

Safety note

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. Danger of injury or life. Do not touch any components that could be live.◂

Do not deviate from the procedure described below, otherwise personal injury could result or both vehicles could be damaged.

Preparations

NOTE

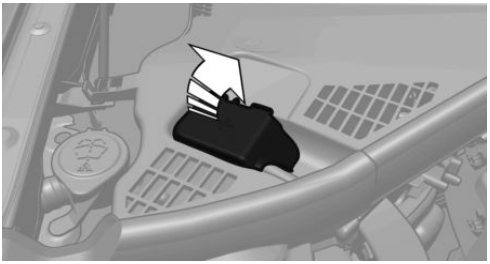
Contact between the bodies of the two vehicles can result in a short circuit during starting assistance. Danger of damage to property. Make sure there is no contact between the bodies.◂

1. Check whether the battery in the other vehicle shows 12 volts. Information about the voltage is provided on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the donor vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical systems in both vehicles.

Jump-starting connections

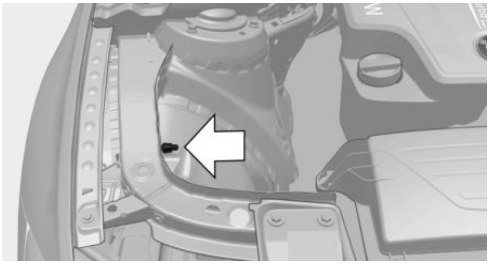
WARNING

Connecting the jump leads in the wrong sequence can cause sparks. Danger of injury. Comply with the correct sequence when connecting up.◂



The jump-starting connection in the engine compartment serves as the positive battery terminal.

Open the cover of the starting assistance connection.



The battery negative terminal is the body earth or a special nut.

Connecting the cables

1. Open the cover of the BMW starting assistance connection.
2. Connect a terminal clamp on the positive/+ jump lead to the positive terminal of the battery or the corresponding jump-starting connection on the donor vehicle.
3. Connect the other terminal clamp to the battery's positive terminal or to the corresponding jump-starting connection on the vehicle to be started.
4. Connect a terminal clamp on the negative/– jump lead to the negative terminal of the battery or the corresponding engine or

body earth connection on the donor vehicle.

5. Connect the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery or to a ground/earth connection on the corresponding engine or body of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Do not use the spray products sold as starting aids.

1. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at a slightly increased idle speed.

   For diesel-engined vehicles to be started: allow the engine of the donor vehicle to run for approx. 10 minutes.

2. Start the engine of the vehicle to be started as normal.

   If an initial attempt to start the engine fails, wait several minutes until the flat battery has been recharged to a slightly greater degree.

3. Allow both engines to run for a few minutes.

4. Disconnect the jump leads in the opposite order from that in which they were originally attached.

Check the battery if necessary and have it recharged.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety note

WARNING

Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems, for example front-end collision warning with light braking function. Danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◄

Manual gearbox

Gearshift lever in idle position.

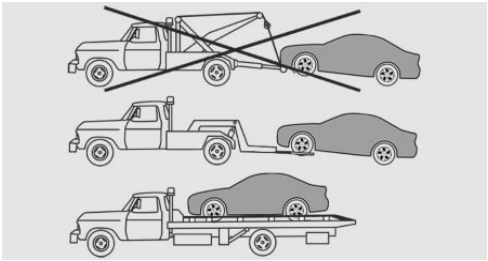
Being towed

Observe the following notes:

- Make sure that the ignition is switched on, otherwise low-beam headlights, rear lights, turn indicators and wipers would not be available.
- Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle raised, otherwise the steering can turn.
- When the engine is not running, there is no power assistance and the brake servo is out of action. The steering and brakes will require extra effort to operate.
- Greater steering wheel movements are necessary.
- The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the towed vehicle, otherwise it may be unable to keep the towed vehicle reliably under control.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of on 50 km/h, 30 mph.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 50 km, 30 miles.

Towing truck

With driven rear axle

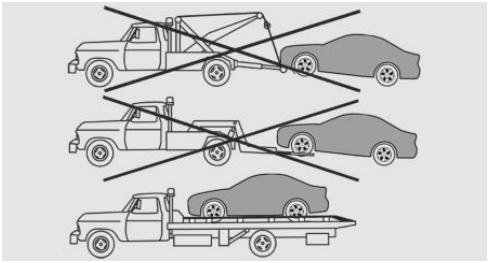


Have the vehicle transported by a towing truck with a hoisting frame, or hoisted onto a loading platform.

NOTE

Raising the vehicle at the towing eye, body or suspension components can cause damage to vehicle parts. Danger of damage to property. Raise vehicle with suitable fixtures.◄

With xDrive



Only have the vehicle transported on a load platform.

NOTE

If the vehicle is towed with an individually lifted axle, the vehicle can be damaged. Danger of damage to property. Only have the vehicle transported on a load platform.◄

NOTE

Raising the vehicle at the towing eye, body or suspension components can cause damage to vehicle parts. Danger of damage to property. Raise vehicle with suitable fixtures.◄

Steptronic transmission: transporting the vehicle

General

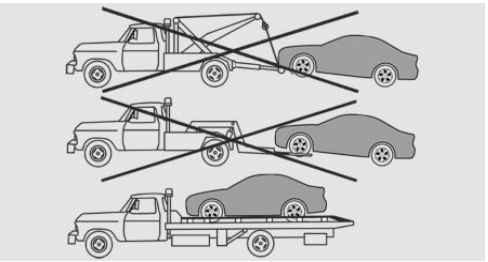
Do not attempt to have the vehicle towed.

Safety note

NOTE

If the vehicle is towed with an individually lifted axle, the vehicle can be damaged. Danger of damage to property. Only have the vehicle transported on a load platform.◄

Towing truck



Only have the vehicle transported on a load platform.

NOTE

Raising the vehicle at the towing eye, body or suspension components can cause damage to vehicle parts. Danger of damage to property. Raise vehicle with suitable fixtures.◄

Use the towing eye screwed into the socket at the front of the vehicle for manoeuvring only.

Pushing vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from a dangerous area, it can be pushed for a short distance. The vehicle can only be pushed with selector lever in N position.

So that the vehicle can roll, proceed as follows:

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Engage selector lever position N.

If there is a fault, it may be possible that a change of selector lever position is not possible.

Unlock the transmission lockout electronically, see page 93, if necessary.

Towing other vehicles

General

Switch on the hazard warning lights, depending on local regulations.

If the vehicle's electrical system has failed, the vehicle being towed must be made identifiable to following vehicles, for instance by placing an indicating label or the warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety instructions

WARNING

If the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is less than that of the vehicle to be towed, the towing eye can be pulled off, or the vehicle may no longer be controllable. Danger of accidents! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is more than the weight of the vehicle to be towed.◄

NOTE

If the tow bar or the towing rope is not attached correctly, other vehicle parts can be damaged. Danger of damage to property. Attach the tow bar or towing rope to the towing eye correctly.◄

Tow bar

The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side.

If it is impossible to avoid attaching the tow bar at an angle, note the following:

- Tow bar clearance may be restricted when cornering.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is attached offset.

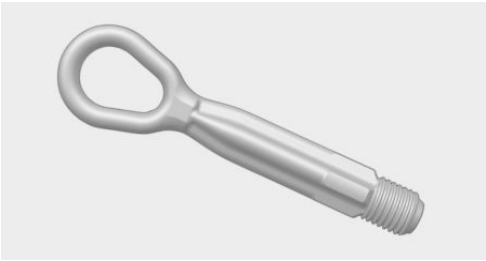
Towing rope

Ensure that the towing rope is taut when the towing vehicle moves off.

For towing, use nylon ropes or straps, as these will help to avoid sudden tensile loads.

Towing eye

General



Always have the screw-on towing eye on board the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed into the front or rear end of the vehicle.

The towing eye together with the on-board tool kit, see page 243, is located in the boot.

Using the towing eye:

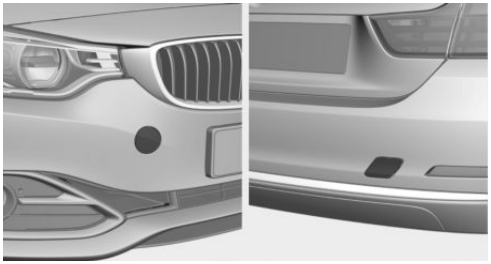
- Use only the towing eye supplied with the vehicle, and make sure that it is screwed in fully and is tight.
- Only use the towing eye for towing on normal roads (in other words not off-road).
- Use the towing eye screwed into the socket at the front of the vehicle for manoeuvring only.
- Avoid lateral loads on the towing eye, for example do not raise the vehicle at the towing eye.

Safety note

NOTE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, the vehicle or towing eye is damaged. Danger of damage to property. Observe the notes on using the towing eye.◄

Thread for towing eye



Press the marking on the edge of the cover to press it out.

Tow-starting

Steptronic transmission

Do not attempt to tow-start or push-start the vehicle.

Due to the Steptronic transmission, it is not possible to start the engine by towing.

Have the cause of the starting difficulties rectified.

Manual gearbox

If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine using starting assistance, see page 253. Only tow-start when the engine is cold if your vehicle has a catalytic converter.

1. Switching on hazard warning lights, please observe country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on ignition, see page 80.
3. Engage 3rd gear.
4. Tow-start with the clutch depressed and release the clutch slowly. Depress the clutch again immediately after the engine starts.
5. Stop in a suitable location, remove the tow bar or towing rope and switch off the hazard warning lights.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

General care

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Washing the vehicle

General

Regularly remove foreign bodies, for example, leaves, with the bonnet opened in the area beneath with windscreen.

Especially in winter, wash the vehicle more frequently. Very high levels of dirt and spreading salt can cause damage to the vehicle.

Steam-jet cleaners and high-pressure cleaners

Safety note

NOTE

When cleaning with high-pressure cleaners, excessive pressure or excessive temperatures can damage various components. Danger of damage to property. Ensure a sufficient distance and do not spray for an extended period of time. Comply with the instructions for the high-pressure cleaner.◄

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 60 °C/140 °F.
- Minimum distance to sensors, cameras, seals: 30 cm, approx. 12 in.
- Minimum distance to the Glass Roof: 80 cm, approx. 31.5 in.

Automatic car washes.

Safety instructions

NOTE

Water can penetrate in the window area due to high pressure washers. Danger of damage to property. Avoid high pressure washers.◄

NOTE

The vehicle can be damaged if automatic washing bays or car washes are used incorrectly. Danger of damage to property. Observe the following notes:

- Textile car washes or systems using soft brushes are preferable, to avoid damage to the paintwork.
- Avoid washing bays or car washes with guide rails more than 10 cm, approximately 4 in high, to avoid damage to the body.
- Note maximum tyre width of the guide rail so as to avoid damage to tyres and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate rain sensor, if fitted, to avoid damage to the wiper system.◄

To reduce false alarms from PDC, switch off automatic activation of PDC when obstacles are detected if necessary, for example in automatic car washes.

Entering a car wash

Follow the steps below so that the vehicle can be driven into a vehicle wash:

Manual gearbox:

1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Engage idle position.
3. Stop the engine.
4. Switch on ignition.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Engage selector lever position N.
3. Stop the engine.

   In this way the ignition remains switched on and a Check Control message is displayed.

   NOTE

   Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when the ignition is switched off. Danger of damage to property. Do not switch the ignition off in car washes.◄

The vehicle must be exited in some car washes. It is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside in selector lever position N. If an attempt is made to lock the vehicle, a signal sounds.

Exit from a car wash

When starting engine with manual gearbox:

1. Make sure that the vehicle key is in the vehicle.
2. Press clutch pedal.
3. Press the start/stop button.

When starting engine with Steptronic transmission:

1. Make sure that the vehicle key is in the vehicle.
2. Press the brake.
3. Press the start/stop button.

Pressing the start/stop button or depressing the brake switches off the ignition.

Selector lever position

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically:

- With the ignition switched off.
- After approximately 15 minutes.

Headlights

- Do not rub them when dry or use abrasive or corrosive cleaning agents.
- Soak impurities such as insects with shampoo and wash off with water.
- Remove ice with a de-icer spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After the vehicle has been washed, briefly apply the brakes to dry them otherwise the braking effectiveness may be temporarily reduced. The heat resulting from braking dries the brake discs and brake pads, as well as protecting them against corrosion.

Completely remove residues on the windscreens to avoid affecting visibility due to smearing, and to reduce wiping noise and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Care products

General

BMW recommend using care and cleaning products from BMW.

Safety note

WARNING

Cleaning agents can contain hazardous substances or constitute a health risk. Danger of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Use only products that are intended for cleaning the vehicle's interior. Observe the notes on the pack.◄

Vehicle paintwork

Regular care promotes driving safety and preserves your vehicle's value. Environmental effects in areas with higher air pollution or natural contaminations, for example tree resin or leaf dust, may have an effect on the vehicle paintwork. Base the frequency and extent of vehicle care on such factors.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, for example spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings so as to prevent alterations and discolourations of the paintwork.

Matt paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products that are suitable for vehicles with matt paintwork. These can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather at regular intervals with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Dust and road dirt will otherwise become worked into pores and folds, causing considerable abrasion and causing the leather surface to become prematurely brittle.

In order to protect against discolouration, for example from clothing, clean and care for the leather approximately every two months.

Clean light-coloured leather more frequently as it has the tendency to soil faster.

Use leather cleaner, otherwise dirt and grease will attack the protective coating of the leather.

Suitable care products are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Care of upholstery fabrics

General

Clean regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

In the event of heavy soiling, for example stains caused by drinks, use a soft sponge or a lint-free microfibre cloth with suitable interior cleaning agents.

Clean upholstery materials over a large area up to the seams. Avoid strong rubbing.

Safety note

NOTE

Open Velcro fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Danger of damage to property. Make sure that any Velcro fasteners on your clothing are closed.◀

Care of special parts

Light alloy wheels

Only when cleaning on the vehicle use neutral rim cleaner with a pH value of between 5 and 9. Do not use any rough cleaner or steam cleaner above 60 °C/140 °F. Observe the manufacturer's notes.

Corrosive, acidic or alkaline cleaners may destroy the protective layer of neighbouring parts, such as brake discs, for example.

After cleaning, briefly apply the brakes to dry them. The heat resulting from braking dries the brake discs and brake pads, as well as protecting them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean parts such as the radiator grille and door handles with plenty of water to which a shampoo may be added, particularly if exposed to road salt.

Rubber parts

The surfaces of rubber parts can be contaminated or loose their shine due to environmental influences. Only use water and suitable care products for cleaning. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends using genuine BMW care products.

Treat particularly stressed rubber parts at regular intervals with rubber care products. Do not use any silicone-based care products for treating rubber seals, otherwise these could be damaged and become a source of noise.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood trims and fine wood parts with a damp cloth only. Then dry them with a soft cloth.

Plastic parts

NOTE

Cleaning agents containing alcohol or solvents, such as nitro thinners, cold cleansers, fuel or similar can damage plastic parts. Danger of damage to property. Use a microfibre cloth to clean. Slightly moisten the cloth with water.◄

Plastic parts include, for example:

- Imitation leather surfaces.
- Roof lining.
- Light covers.
- Glass cover of instrument cluster.
- Parts sprayed matt black.
- Painted parts in the interior.

Use a microfibre cloth to clean.

Slightly moisten the cloth with water.

Do not soak the roof lining.

Seat belts

WARNING

Chemical cleaners can cause irreparable damage to the fabric of the seat belts. Lack of protective effect of the seat belts. Danger of injury or life. Only use a mild soap and water solution for cleaning the seat belts.◄

Dirt on the seat belt straps can interfere with the action of the reel and represent a safety hazard.

Clean only with a mild soap solution while still fitted to the vehicle.

Never allow seat belts to retract unless they are dry.

Carpets and foot mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel, or block a pedal that has been pressed. Danger of accidents. Stow items in the vehicle so that they are secure and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are appropriate for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use any loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely reattached after having been removed, for example for cleaning.◄

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle to enable the interior to be cleaned more thoroughly.

In the event of heavy soiling, clean floor carpets using a microfibre cloth and water or textile cleaner. In doing so, rub back and forth in the direction of travel, otherwise the carpet can become tangled.

Sensors/lenses of the camera

Clean sensors or lenses of the camera using a cloth moistened with a small amount of a glass detergent.

Displays/screens/protective sleeve of the Head-Up Displays

NOTE

Chemical cleaners, moisture or fluids of all kinds can damage the surface of displays and screens. Danger of damage to property. Use a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth to clean.◄

NOTE

The surfaces of displays can be damaged due to improper cleaning. Danger of damage to property. Avoid applying excessive pressure and do not use abrasive materials.◄

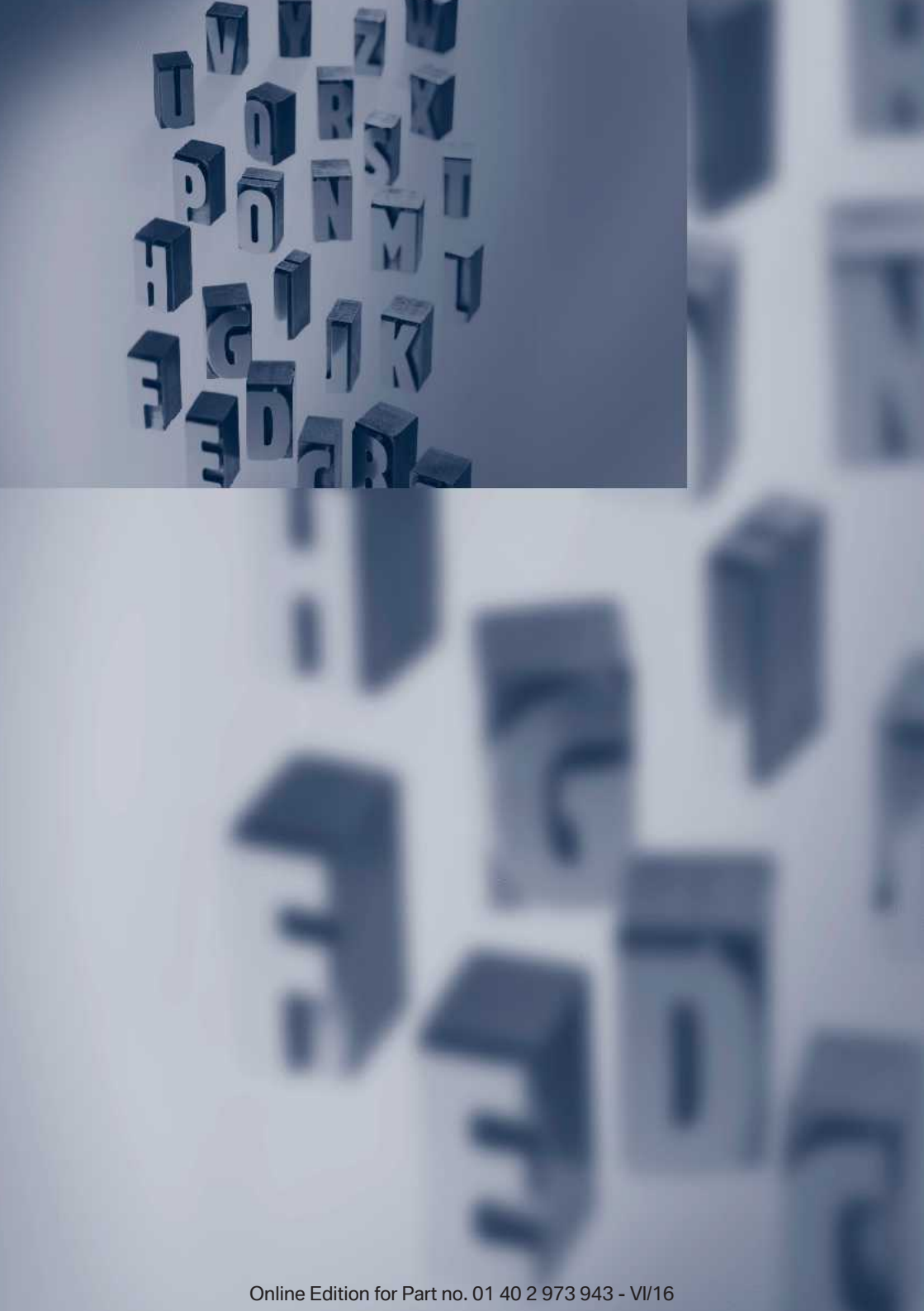
Use a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth to clean.

Head-Up Display:

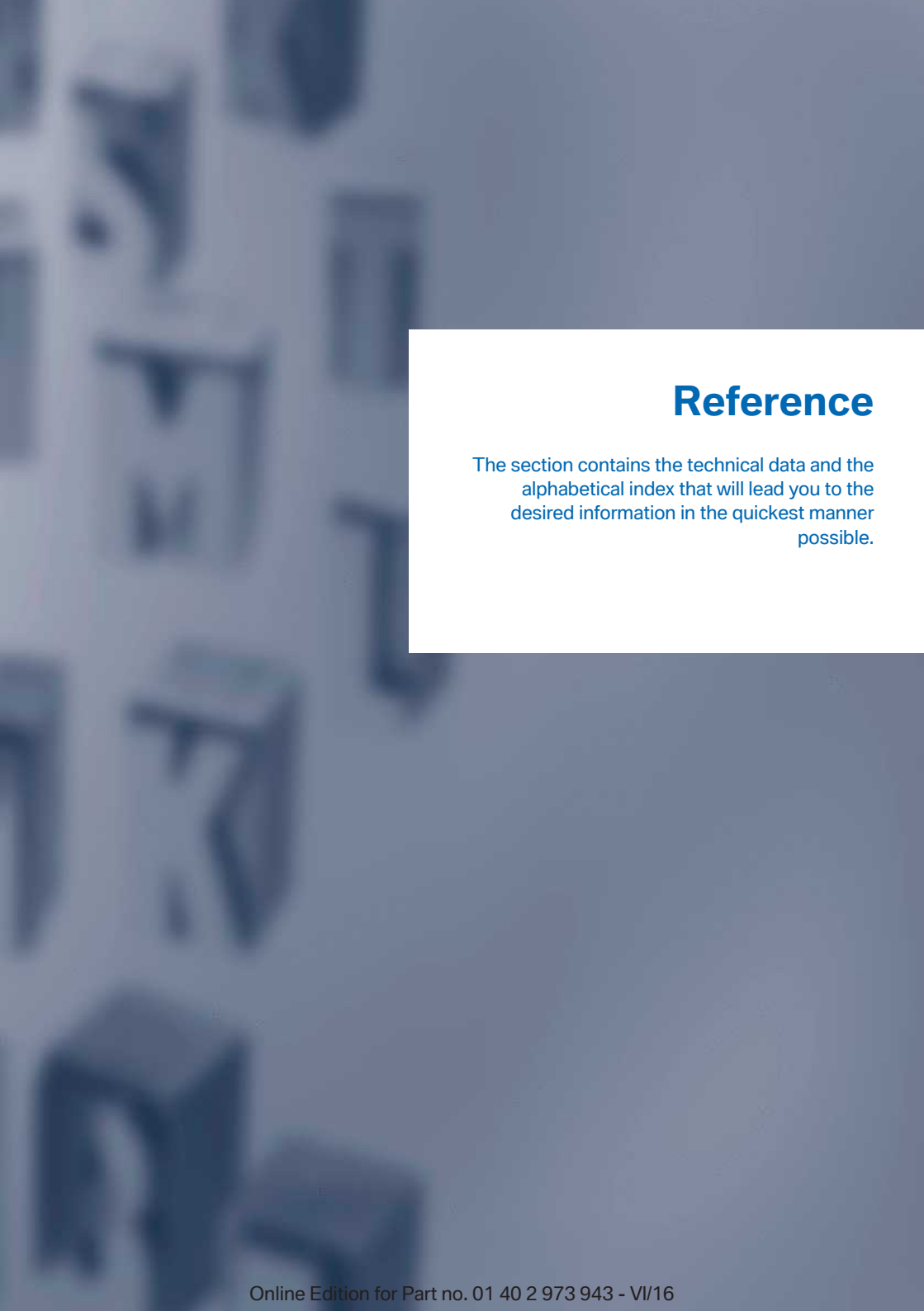
Clean the protective sleeve of the Head-Up Display with a microfibre cloth and commercially available dishwashing liquid.

Laying up out of use

When the vehicle is laid up for longer than three months, special measures are to be taken. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16



Reference

The section contains the technical data and the alphabetical index that will lead you to the desired information in the quickest manner possible.

Technical data

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Handbook are indications. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for example, due to selected special equipment, country variant or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the permit documents, on indicating labels on the vehicle or can be requested from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The information in the vehicle papers always takes precedence over the information in this Owner's Handbook.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The heights specified do not take into account add-on parts such as a roof aerial, roof railing or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for example, due to selected special equipment, tyres, loads and chassis design.

BMW 4 Series Gran Coupé		
Width with mirrors	mm	2017
Width without mirrors	mm	1825
Height	mm	1389-1404
Length	mm	4638
Wheelbase	mm	2810
Smallest turning circle dia.	m (ft)	11.3-11.8 (37.1-38.8)

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Weights

418i		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1560 (3439)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1585 (3494)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2045 (4508)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2070 (4564)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	915 (2017)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1210 (2668)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

420i		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1595 (3516)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1615 (3560)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2080 (4586)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2100 (4630)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	945 (2083)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1210 (2668)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

430i		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1595 (3516)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1615 (3560)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2080 (4586)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2100 (4630)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	940 (2072)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1215 (2679)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

440i		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1690 (3726)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2175 (4795)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1000 (2205)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1230 (2712)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

420i xDrive		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1675 (3693)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1690 (3726)
Permitted gross weight		

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

420i xDrive		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1675 (3693)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1690 (3726)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	995 (2194)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1230 (2712)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

430i xDrive		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1690 (3726)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2175 (4795)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	995 (2194)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1230 (2712)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

440i xDrive		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1760 (3880)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2245 (4949)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1065 (2348)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1230 (2712)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

418d		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1585 (3494)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1605 (3538)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2070 (4564)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2090 (4608)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	935 (2061)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1215 (2679)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

420d		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1595 (3516)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1615 (3560)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2080 (4586)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1615 (3560)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	945 (2083)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1215 (2679)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

425d		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1625 (3583)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1635 (3605)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2110 (4652)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1635 (3605)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	955 (2105)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1230 (2712)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

430d		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1690 (3726)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2175 (4795)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	990 (2183)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1225 (2701)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

420d xDrive		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1670 (3682)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1690 (3726)
Permitted gross weight		

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

420d xDrive		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2155 (4751)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2175 (4795)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1005 (2216)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1230 (2712)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

430d xDrive		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1755 (3869)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2240 (4938)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1050 (2315)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1230 (2712)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

435d xDrive		
Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1775 (3913)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2260 (4982)
Load	kg (lb)	560 (1235)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1060 (2337)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1230 (2712)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	480-1300 (16.9-45.8)

Towing a trailer

418i		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	695 (1532)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1300 (2866)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1320 (2910)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2120 (4674)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2145 (4729)

420i		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	695 (1532)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1400 (3086)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1320 (2910)
Permitted gross weight		

420i		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2155 (4751)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2175 (4795)

430i		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	745 (1642)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1700 (3748)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1325 (2921)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2155 (4751)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2175 (4795)

440i		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1700 (3748)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1340 (2954)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2250 (4960)

420i xDrive		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1700 (3748)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1340 (2954)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2235 (4927)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2250 (4960)

430i xDrive		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1700 (3748)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1340 (2954)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2250 (4960)

440i xDrive		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)

440i xDrive		
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1340 (2954)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2320 (5115)

418d		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	745 (1642)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1700 (3748)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1325 (2921)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2145 (4729)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2165 (4773)

420d		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	745 (1642)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1325 (2921)
Permitted gross weight		

420d		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2155 (4751)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2175 (4795)

425d		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1340 (2954)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2185 (4817)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2195 (4839)

430d		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1340 (2954)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2250 (4960)

420d xDrive		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1340 (2954)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2230 (4916)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2250 (4960)

430d xDrive		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1345 (2965)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2315 (5104)

435d xDrive		
Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be queried at the Service Centre.		
Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)

435d xDrive		
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1345 (2965)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2335 (5148)

Filling capacities

	Litres/imp. gal	Note
Fuel tank, approximately.		Fuel grade, see page 216
Petrol	60.0/13.2	
Diesel	57.0/12.5	

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Appendix

Here is where any updates to the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle are listed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

B

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

C

D

E

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

M

N

O

P

R

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

S

T

U

V

W

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16

X

Y

More about BMW

www.bmw.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

01 40 2 973 943 en

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 973 943 - VI/16